

VMware vCenter Configuration Manager Administration Guide

vCenter Configuration Manager 5.5

This document supports the version of each product listed and supports all subsequent versions until the document is replaced by a new edition. To check for more recent editions of this document, see <http://www.vmware.com/support/pubs>.

EN-000674-00

vmware[®]

You can find the most up-to-date technical documentation on the VMware Web site at:

<http://www.vmware.com/support/>

The VMware Web site also provides the latest product updates.

If you have comments about this documentation, submit your feedback to:

docfeedback@vmware.com

© 2006–2012 VMware, Inc. All rights reserved. This product is protected by U.S. and international copyright and intellectual property laws. VMware products are covered by one or more patents listed at <http://www.vmware.com/go/patents>.

VMware is a registered trademark or trademark of VMware, Inc. in the United States and/or other jurisdictions. All other marks and names mentioned herein may be trademarks of their respective companies.

VMware, Inc.
3401 Hillview Ave.
Palo Alto, CA 94304
www.vmware.com

Contents

| | |
|--|----|
| About This Book | 9 |
| Getting Started with VCM | 11 |
| Understanding User Access | 11 |
| Running VCM as Administrator on the Collector | 12 |
| Log In to VCM | 12 |
| Getting Familiar with the Portal | 13 |
| General Information Bar | 13 |
| Toolbar | 14 |
| Sliders | 15 |
| Customizing VCM for your Environment | 16 |
| Installing and Getting Started with VCM Tools | 19 |
| Install the VCM Tools Only | 19 |
| VCM Import/Export and Content Wizard Tools | 20 |
| Run the Import/Export Tool | 21 |
| Run the Content Wizard to Access Additional Compliance Content | 21 |
| Run the Deployment Utility | 21 |
| Package Studio | 22 |
| Foundation Checker | 22 |
| Configuring VMware Cloud Infrastructure | 23 |
| Virtual Environments Configuration | 23 |
| Managing Agents | 24 |
| Managing vCenter Server Instances, Hosts, and Guest Virtual Machines | 25 |
| Managing Instances of vCloud Director and vApp Virtual Machines | 25 |
| Managing vShield Manager Instances | 25 |
| Configure Virtual Environments Collections | 25 |
| Configure Managing Agent Machines | 26 |
| Collect Machines Data From the Managing Agent Machines | 27 |
| Set the Trust Status for Managing Agent Machines | 27 |
| Configure HTTPS Bypass Setting | 28 |
| Enable Managing Agent Machines | 28 |
| Obtain the SSL Certificate Thumbprint | 29 |
| Configure vCenter Server Data Collections | 30 |
| Add vCenter Server Instances | 30 |
| Configure the vCenter Server Settings | 31 |
| Collect vCenter Server Data | 32 |
| vCenter Server Collection Results | 33 |
| Configure vCenter Server Virtual Machine Collections | 33 |
| Collect vCenter Server Virtual Machines Data | 34 |
| Manage vCenter Server Virtual Machines | 34 |
| Configure vCloud Director Collections | 35 |
| Add vCloud Director Instances | 35 |
| Configure the vCloud Director Settings | 36 |
| Collect vCloud Director Data | 37 |
| vCloud Director Collection Results | 38 |
| Configure vCloud Director vApp Virtual Machines Collections | 39 |
| Network Address Translation and vCloud Director vApp Discovery Rules | 39 |
| Discover vCloud Director vApp Virtual Machines | 41 |

| | |
|---|-----|
| Configure vShield Manager Collections | 45 |
| Configure ESX Service Console OS Collections | 48 |
| Configure the Collector as an Agent Proxy | 49 |
| Configure Virtual Machine Hosts | 50 |
| Copy Files to the ESX/ESXi Servers | 51 |
| Collect ESX Logs Data | 53 |
| Virtualization Collection Results | 53 |
| Configure the vSphere Client VCM Plug-In | 54 |
| Register the vSphere Client VCM Plug-In | 54 |
| Configuring the vSphere Client VCM Plug-In Integration Settings | 55 |
| Manage Machines from the vSphere Client | 56 |
| Troubleshooting the vSphere Client VCM Plug-In Registration | 56 |
| | |
| Running Compliance for the VMware Cloud Infrastructure | 59 |
| Create and Run Virtual Environment Compliance Templates | 59 |
| Create Virtual Environment Compliance Rule Groups | 60 |
| Create and Test Virtual Environment Compliance Rules | 60 |
| Create and Test Virtual Environment Compliance Filters | 61 |
| Preview Virtual Environment Compliance Rule Groups | 62 |
| Create Virtual Environment Compliance Templates | 63 |
| Run Virtual Environment Compliance Templates | 64 |
| Create Virtual Environment Compliance Exceptions | 64 |
| | |
| Configuring vCenter Operations Manager Integration | 67 |
| Configure vCenter Operations Manager with VCM | 67 |
| | |
| Auditing Security Changes in Your Environment | 69 |
| | |
| Configuring Windows Machines | 71 |
| Verify Available Domains | 72 |
| Check the Network Authority | 72 |
| Assign Network Authority Accounts | 73 |
| Discover Windows Machines | 73 |
| License Windows Machines | 74 |
| Disable User Account Control for VCM Agent Installation | 75 |
| Disable User Account Control for a Windows Machine | 75 |
| Disable User Account Control By Using Group Policy | 76 |
| Install the VCM Windows Agent on Your Windows Machines | 77 |
| Locate the Enterprise Certificate | 78 |
| Manually Install the VCM Windows Agent | 78 |
| Manually Uninstall the VCM Windows Agent | 82 |
| Enable UAC After VCM Agent Installation | 83 |
| Enable User Account Control on a Single Windows Machine | 83 |
| Enable UAC By Using a Group Policy | 83 |
| Collect Windows Data | 84 |
| Windows Collection Results | 85 |
| Getting Started with Windows Custom Information | 86 |
| Prerequisites to Collect Windows Custom Information | 87 |
| Using PowerShell Scripts for WCI Collections | 87 |
| Windows Custom Information Change Management | 97 |
| Collecting Windows Custom Information | 98 |
| Create Your Own WCI PowerShell Collection Script | 99 |
| Verify that Your Custom PowerShell Script is Valid | 99 |
| Install PowerShell | 100 |
| Collect Windows Custom Information Data | 100 |
| Run the Script-Based Collection Filter | 101 |
| View Windows Custom Information Job Status Details | 102 |

| | |
|--|-----|
| Windows Custom Information Collection Results | 103 |
| Run Windows Custom Information Reports | 104 |
| Troubleshooting Custom PowerShell Scripts | 104 |
| Configuring Linux and UNIX Machines | 107 |
| Upgrade Requirements for UNIX/Linux Machines | 107 |
| Add UNIX/Linux Machines | 108 |
| License UNIX/Linux Machines | 109 |
| Install the Agent on UNIX/Linux Machines | 109 |
| Installation Options for UNIX/Linux <code>csi.config</code> | 113 |
| Manually Uninstall the UNIX/Linux Agent | 115 |
| Collect UNIX/Linux Data | 116 |
| Updates to UNIX Patch Assessment Content Affects UNIX Agent Performance | 116 |
| UNIX/Linux Collection Results | 116 |
| Configuring Oracle Instances | 117 |
| Discover Oracle Instances | 118 |
| Edit Oracle Instances | 118 |
| Collect Oracle Data | 123 |
| Oracle Collection Results | 124 |
| Configuring Mac OS X Machines | 125 |
| Add Mac OS X Machines | 125 |
| License Mac OS X Machines | 126 |
| Install the Agent on Mac OS X Machines | 127 |
| Installation Options for Max OS X <code>csi.config</code> | 130 |
| Manually Uninstall the Mac OS X Agent | 132 |
| Collect Mac OS X Data | 132 |
| Collected Mac OS X Data Types | 133 |
| Mac OS X Collection Results | 133 |
| Patching Managed Machines | 135 |
| VCM Patching for Windows Machines | 135 |
| VCM Patching for UNIX and Linux Machines | 136 |
| UNIX and Linux Patch Assessment and Deployment | 136 |
| New UNIX Patch Assessment Content | 137 |
| Getting Started with VCM Patching | 138 |
| Getting Started with VCM Patching for Windows Machines | 138 |
| Check for Updates to Bulletins | 139 |
| Collect Data from Windows Machines by Using the VCM Patching Filter Sets | 139 |
| Assess Windows Machines | 140 |
| Review VCM Patching Windows Assessment Results | 141 |
| Prerequisites for Patch Deployment | 141 |
| Default Location for UNIX/Linux Patches | 143 |
| Location for UNIX/Linux Patches | 143 |
| Default Location for UNIX/Linux Patches | 144 |
| vCenter Software Content Repository Tool | 144 |
| Deploy Patches to Windows Machines | 144 |
| Getting Started with VCM Patching for UNIX and Linux Machines | 146 |
| Check for Updates to Bulletins | 146 |
| Collect Patch Assessment Data from UNIX and Linux Machines | 147 |
| Explore Assessment Results and Acquire and Store the Patches | 148 |
| Default Location for UNIX/Linux Patches | 150 |
| Deploy Patches to UNIX/Linux Machines | 150 |
| How the Deploy Action Works | 151 |
| Running VCM Patching Reports | 151 |
| Customize Your Environment for VCM Patching | 152 |
| Running and Enforcing Compliance | 153 |

| | |
|--|-----|
| Getting Started with SCAP Compliance | 153 |
| Conduct SCAP Compliance Assessments | 154 |
| Provisioning Physical or Virtual Machine Operating Systems | 157 |
| Operating System Provisioning Components | 157 |
| How Operating System Provisioning Works | 158 |
| Configure Operating System Provisioning Servers | 159 |
| Add Operating System Provisioning Servers | 160 |
| Set the Trust Status for Operating System Provisioning Servers | 160 |
| Collect Operating System Distributions | 161 |
| Discover Provisionable Machines | 161 |
| Provision Machines with Operating System Distributions | 162 |
| Provision Windows Machines | 162 |
| Provision Linux Machines | 165 |
| Change Agent Communication | 171 |
| Provisioned Machines Results | 171 |
| Reprovision Machines | 172 |
| Provisioning Software on Managed Machines | 175 |
| Using Package Studio to Create Software Packages and Publish to Repositories | 175 |
| Software Repository for Windows | 175 |
| Package Manager for Windows | 175 |
| Software Provisioning Component Relationships | 176 |
| Install the Software Provisioning Components | 176 |
| Install Software Repository for Windows | 177 |
| Install Package Studio | 178 |
| Install Package Manager on Managed Machines | 180 |
| Using Package Studio to Create Software Packages and Publish to Repositories | 181 |
| Creating Packages | 181 |
| Using VCM Software Provisioning for Windows | 183 |
| Collect Package Manager Information from Machines | 183 |
| Collect Software Repository Data | 184 |
| Add Repository Sources to Package Managers | 185 |
| Install Packages | 186 |
| Related Software Provisioning Actions | 188 |
| Viewing Provisioning Jobs in the Job Manager | 188 |
| Create Compliance Rules Based on Software Provisioning Data | 189 |
| Create Compliance Rules Containing Software Provisioning Remediation Actions | 190 |
| Configuring Active Directory Environments | 193 |
| Configure Domain Controllers | 193 |
| Verify Available Domains | 194 |
| Check the Network Authority Account | 194 |
| Assign Network Authority Accounts | 195 |
| Discover Domain Controllers | 195 |
| License Domain Controllers | 196 |
| Install the VCM Windows Agent on Your Domain Controllers | 197 |
| Collect Domain Controller Data | 198 |
| Configure VCM for Active Directory as an Additional Product | 199 |
| Install VCM for Active Directory on the Domain Controllers | 199 |
| Run the Determine Forest Action | 200 |
| Run the Domain Controller Setup Action | 201 |
| Collect Active Directory Data | 201 |
| Active Directory Collection Results | 202 |
| Configuring Remote Machines | 205 |
| VCM Remote Management Workflow | 205 |

| | |
|--|-----|
| Configuring VCM Remote Connection Types | 205 |
| Using Certificates With VCM Remote | 206 |
| Configure and Install the VCM Remote Client | 206 |
| Configure the VCM Remote Settings | 206 |
| Install the VCM Remote Client | 209 |
| Connect VCM Remote Client Machines to the Network | 216 |
| VCM Remote Collection Results | 217 |
| | |
| Tracking Unmanaged Hardware and Software Asset Data | 219 |
| Configure Asset Data Fields | 219 |
| Review Available Asset Data Fields | 220 |
| Add an Asset Data Field | 220 |
| Edit an Asset Data Field | 221 |
| Delete a VCM for Assets Data Field | 222 |
| Change the Order of Asset Data Columns | 222 |
| Refresh Dynamic Asset Data Fields | 223 |
| Configure Asset Data Values for VCM Machines | 223 |
| Configure Asset Data for Other Hardware Devices | 224 |
| Add Other Hardware Devices | 224 |
| Add Multiple Similar Other Hardware Devices | 225 |
| Edit Asset Data for Other Hardware Devices | 225 |
| Edit Asset Data Values for Other Hardware Devices | 226 |
| Delete Other Hardware Devices | 226 |
| Configure Asset Data for Software | 227 |
| Add Software Assets | 227 |
| Add Multiple Similar Software Assets | 228 |
| Edit Asset Data for Software | 229 |
| Edit Asset Data Values for Software | 229 |
| Delete Software Data | 230 |
| | |
| Managing Changes with Service Desk Integration | 231 |
| Configure Service Desk Integration | 231 |
| View Service Desk Integration in the Console | 231 |
| View Service Desk Integration in Job Manager | 232 |
| | |
| Index | 233 |

About This Book

The *VMware vCenter Configuration Manager Administration Guide* describes the steps required to configure VCM to collect and manage data from your virtual and physical environment.

Read this document and complete the associated procedures to prepare for a successful implementation of the components.

Intended Audience

This information is written for experienced Windows or UNIX/Linux/Mac OS X system administrators who are familiar with managing network users and resources and with performing system maintenance.

To use this information effectively, you must have a basic understanding of how to configure network resources, install software, and administer operating systems. You also need to fully understand your network topology and resource naming conventions.

Document Feedback

VMware welcomes your suggestions for improving our documentation. If you have comments, send your feedback to docfeedback@vmware.com.

VMware VCM Documentation

The vCenter Configuration Manager (VCM) documentation consists of the VCM Installation Guide, *VCM Troubleshooting Guide*, VCM online Help, and other associated documentation.

Technical Support and Education Resources

The following technical support resources are available to you. To access the current version of this book and other books, go to <http://www.vmware.com/support/pubs>.

- Online and Telephone Support** To use online support to submit technical support requests, view your product and contract information, and register your products, go to <http://www.vmware.com/support>. Customers with appropriate support contracts should use telephone support for priority 1 issues. Go to http://www.vmware.com/support/phone_support.html.
- Support Offerings** To find out how VMware support offerings can help meet your business needs, go to <http://www.vmware.com/support/services>.
- VMware Professional Services** VMware Education Services courses offer extensive hands-on labs, case study examples, and course materials designed to be used as on-the-job reference tools. Courses are available onsite, in the classroom, and live online. For onsite pilot programs and implementation best practices, VMware Consulting Services provides offerings to help you assess, plan, build, and manage your virtual environment. To access information about education classes, certification programs, and consulting services, go to <http://www.vmware.com/services>.

Getting Started with VCM

When you use VCM, you must understand user access and how to start VCM from any physical or virtual machine. You must also familiarize yourself with the VCM Web Console features.

- ["Understanding User Access" on page 11](#)

User access determines who has access to VCM and with what roles.

- ["Log In to VCM" on page 12](#)

Access VCM from any physical or virtual machine in your network.

- ["Getting Familiar with the Portal" on page 13](#)

The VCM Web Console provides access to all VCM features to manage your environment.

Understanding User Access

User access determines who has access to VCM and with what roles. To manage your user access, create rules that are assigned to roles. VCM assigns the roles to each user login you create. User access is managed in the Administration User Manager node.

The user account that was used to install VCM is automatically granted access to VCM, placed in the roles of ADMIN and USER, and placed into the Admin role. This user can log in to VCM using the Admin role. The AD_Admin role allows full administration access to AD objects only.

When a user is added to the Admin role in VCM or granted access to the Administration User Manager node, that user is placed in the fixed machine roles Security Administrators and Bulk Insert Administrators Groups. They are also added to the database roles of public, ADMIN, and User in the VCM Database.

Users who will not have access to the Administration User Manager node will be assigned to public. Depending on the functions granted to a user, they might need additional or fewer privileges for their role to function properly.

VCM provides a Change Restricted role to limit users from making certain changes in your environment. With this role, users can discover, collect data from machines, assess machines, display bulletin and template details, check for updates, and view history. Users can add, edit, and delete reports, compliance rules and rule groups, and compliance and patch assessment templates. They can also install the Agent, upgrade VCM, and uninstall VCM.

When you apply the VCM Change Restricted role to a user's VCM login, they cannot perform the following actions.

- Remote command execution
- Change actions against target managed machines
- Change rollback
- Compliance enforcement
- Patch deployment
- Software deployment
- OS provisioning
- Machine reboots

All VCM user accounts must have the following rights on the VCM Collector machine.

- Ability to log on locally to access IIS
- Read access to the `System32` folder
- Write access to the `CMFiles$\Exported_Reports` folder to export reports
- If default permissions have been changed, read access to the `C:\Program Files (x86)\VMware\VCM\WebConsole` directory and all subdirectories and files

Users who add machines to VCM using a file or the Available Machines Add Machines action must have write access to `CMFiles$\Discovery_Files`.

Running VCM as Administrator on the Collector

By default for localhost, Internet Explorer on Windows Server 2008 R2 runs with Protected Mode enabled. If you are logged in to VCM as an Administrator, because Protected Mode is enabled, problems can occur with the SQLServer Reporting Service (SSRS) Web service interface components such as dashboards and node summaries.



CAUTION Although you should not access VCM on the Collector using a Web console, to restore the SSRS functionality you can run Internet Explorer as administrator or disable Protected Mode for the zone of the Collector (localhost). If you perform this action, you must take additional precautions to protect the Collector because of the increased exposure to attacks on the Collector through the Web browser, such as cross-site scripting.

Log In to VCM

Access VCM from any physical or virtual machine in your network. The level of access is determined by your VCM administrator.

Prerequisites

- Verify that the physical or virtual machines from which you are accessing VCM have a supported version of Internet Explorer installed. For supported platforms, see the *VCM Installation Guide*.
- Configure the Internet Explorer Pop-up Blocker settings to add your Collector to your list of allowed Web sites, or disable Pop-up Blocker. Click **Internet Explorer** and select **Tools > Pop-up Blocker > Pop-up Blocker Settings** and then add the path for your Collector in the allowable address field.

Procedure

1. To connect to VCM from a physical or virtual machine on your network, open Internet Explorer and type `http://<name-or-IP-address-of-Collector-machine>/VCM`.
2. Type your user network credentials.
3. (Optional) Select **Automatically log on using this role** to have VCM log you in.
4. Click **Log On**.

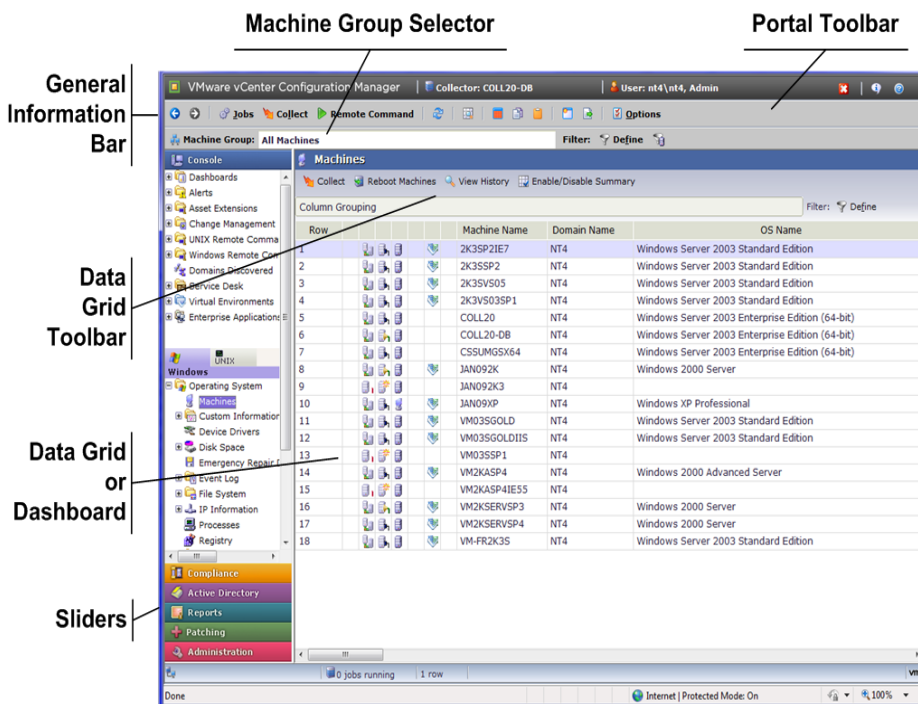
Your VCM user account can have multiple roles. If you selected the **Automatically log on using this role** option, VCM will automatically log you on as the User Role displayed on the Logon screen. To change roles, you must use the Logoff button in the top right corner of the Console. This action will return you to the Logon screen so that you can use the drop-down menu to select a different role.

Getting Familiar with the Portal

The VCM Web Console provides access to all VCM features to manage your environment.

The Web Console uses a browser-based interface to run from any Windows machine that has access to the server on which VCM is installed. The Windows machine must be running Internet Explorer or Mozilla Firefox with the Internet Explorer tab plug-in installed.

The Web Console includes several major areas and controls.















General Information Bar

The general information bar displays the VCM Collector's active SQL Server name, your VCM user name and active Role, and the following buttons.

- **Log Out:** Exits the Web Console. The Web Console closes and the VCM Logon screen appears.
- **About:** Displays information about how to contact VMware Technical Support and version information for VCM and all of its components. This information may be important when you contact VMware Technical Support.
- **Help:** Opens the online Help for the currently-active display.

Toolbar

The global toolbar provides you with easily-accessible options to enhance control of your environment and data.

| | |
|---|--|
|  | The left and right arrow buttons navigate to the previous or next page in the data area. |
|  | The Jobs button opens the Jobs Running status window. This button provides access to the Collector status and allows you to stop and restart the Collector service. |
|  | The Collect button opens a wizard that allows you to define and initiate data collections. |
|  | The Remote Commands button allows you to invoke the Remote Commands wizard from the toolbar without having to access the node. |
|  | The Refresh data grid view button refreshes the data grid. Press F5 on the keyboard as an alternative action. |
|  | The View row cells button displays a vertically scrolling view of a single row of data, rather than the table-based data grid view in a separate window, and allows you to move between records. |
|  | The Select all displayed data rows button selects all the rows in the data grid. |
|  | The Copy button copies information from the selected rows in the data grid to the clipboard. |
|  | The Copy link to clipboard button copies the link of the content on-screen to the clipboard. |
|  | The View data grid in separate window button displays the data grid in a separate window. |
|  | The Export displayed data button exports data to a CSV formatted file. This file is exported to \\<name_of_Collector_machine>\CMfiles\$\Exported Reports. |
|  | The Options button opens the User Options window. These settings pertain to the User who is logged in to VCM. All VCM users can configure these settings to their individual preferences. |

Sliders

The sliders on the left side of the Web Console include the items listed and described in the following table. The individual items that you see in VCM will vary depending on the components that you have licensed.

- Active Directory and AD objects are available only when VCM for Active Directory (AD) is licensed. This slider is viewable based on your role.
- Patching options are available only when VCM Patching is licensed. This slider is viewable based on your role.
- Administration is visible only to users who have Administrative rights to VCM as part of their VCM role.

For detailed instructions about any of these features, see the online Help.

| Slider | Action |
|------------------|--|
| Console | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ View, export, or print enterprise-wide, summary information. ■ Review or acknowledge current alert notifications. ■ Manage VCM discovered and non-VCM discovered hardware and software assets. ■ Review changes that occurred from one collection to the next. ■ Create, edit, or run remote commands on a VCM managed Windows or UNIX machine. ■ View information about VCM discovered domains. ■ Navigate and manage integrated service desk events. ■ Manage virtual machines. ■ View your Windows NT Domain and Active Directory related data. ■ View information for enterprise-level applications. ■ Review non-security related UNIX machine-specific information. ■ Review UNIX security data to ensure consistent security configurations across your environment. |
| Compliance | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Create and manage Compliance rule groups and templates based on AD objects or machine group data. |
| Active Directory | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ View, export, or print enterprise-wide, summary information for Active Directory objects. ■ Review alert notifications for the selected AD location. ■ Review Active Directory-related changes that occurred from one collection to the next. ■ View collected information about Active Directory objects such as Users, Groups, Contacts, Computers, Printers, Shares, and Organizational Units. ■ Review Active Directory site lists, including Site Links, Site Link Bridges, Subnets, Intersite Transports, Servers, Connections and Licensing. ■ View Active Directory Group Policy Container Settings. ■ View information about Active Directory Domains, DCs, and Trusts. ■ Track and display access control entries and security descriptor data on all collected |

| Slider | Action |
|----------------|---|
| | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> objects. View Active Directory Schema information. |
| Reports | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Run out-of-the-box reports against your collected data. Write your own SQL and SSRS reports using VCM's report wizard. |
| Patching | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Review a list of bulletins available to VCM. Create, run, or import VCM Patching templates to display the machines that require the patches described in each bulletin. Monitor VCM Patching jobs. Deploy patches. |
| Administration | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Manage basic configuration options for VCM. Establish filters to limit the data you collect from machines in your environment. Review how your VCM licenses are being used. Identify and manage your physical and virtual machines. Manage VCM Logins and Roles. Set options for assessment and deployment. View the status of jobs that are currently running, scheduled to run, or completed. Configure VCM to notify you of certain conditions in your environment. |

Customizing VCM for your Environment

Create a machine group structure that matches the organization of the machines in your environment. With these machine groups, you can manage specific machines in your environment such as all SQL Servers in a particular location. You can apply specific changes or create roles and rules for those machines independently from other machines in your environment. This approach ensures that you can restrict access to critical machines to the appropriate users with rights to VCM.

You can customize the following options for your environment.

- Alerts:** Define the objects and types of changes that you are alerted to when they are detected in VCM. For example, you can set an alert to notify you if a registry setting changes in your environment.
- Collection Filters and Filter Sets:** Use collection filters to specify the data to collect from the VCM managed machines. A default collection filter is provided for each data type. You can add custom collection filters that are specific to your enterprise. You can apply filters during instant collections and scheduled collections if the filters are included in a filter set. After you create collection filters, organize them into filter sets. You can create specific filter sets or filter set groups for different machine groups. You can apply filter sets during instant collections or scheduled collections.
- Compliance Templates and Rule Groups:** Use compliance templates and rule groups to define specific settings and verify whether the machines match those criteria. VCM provides prepackaged templates and rules to check the compliance of your machines with regulatory, industry, and vendor standards. VMware provides additional compliance packages that you can import into VCM.
- Reports:** Create and print tailored reports of information that does not appear in VCM. VCM provides prepackaged reports that you can run after you collect data from your VCM managed machines.

- **Roles and Rules:** VCM roles and access rules work together to control user access to VCM. For example, you can create a role that allows a user to view all data, but not make changes to the environment. You can create a role to run certain reports or a role that allows unlimited access to a single machine group.

The VCM Change Restricted role limits users from making certain changes in your environment. See ["Understanding User Access" on page 11](#).

For information to import additional compliance packages into VCM, see [Import/Export and Content Wizard](#).

Installing and Getting Started with VCM Tools

2

VCM Installation Manager installs several VCM components and tools on the Collector machine during the installation.

Using VCM Installation Manager, you can install the following tools.

- ["Run the Import/Export Tool" on page 21](#)

Use the Import/Export Tool to back up your VCM database business objects and import them into a new VCM database or into a recovered VCM database. This tool also supports the migration of any VCM Management Extension for Asset data that was manually added to VCM.

- ["Run the Content Wizard to Access Additional Compliance Content" on page 21](#)

Use the Content Wizard to import additional VMware content such as VCM Compliance Content Packages.

- ["Run the Deployment Utility" on page 21](#)

The Deployment Utility for UNIX/Linux and ESX/vSphere copies files to multiple target machines when you configure UNIX/Linux and ESX/vSphere machines for management in VCM.

- ["Package Studio" on page 22](#)

Use Package Studio to create software packages that can be installed by VCM.

- ["Foundation Checker" on page 22](#)

Use the Foundation Checker tool to verify that a Windows machine designated as a VCM Collector meets all of the prerequisites necessary to install VCM.

Install the VCM Tools Only

You can install the VCM tools on a non-Collector Windows machine.

If you plan to install VCM on the non-Collector Windows machine later, you must uninstall the tools and then install VCM.

Prerequisites

Perform the installation requirements for each tool in the Advanced Installation selection. For example, you can install Import/Export (I/E) and Content Wizard only on a machine that is running VCM.

Procedure

1. On the non-Collector Windows machine on which you want to install the tools, insert the installation CD.
2. In Installation Manager, click **Run Installation Manager**.
During the installation, follow the installation requirements that Installation Manager reports when Foundation Checker runs.
3. Complete the initial installation pages, and click **Next** on subsequent pages to access the Select Installation Type page.
 - a. Clear the **VMware vCenter Configuration Manager** check box.
 - b. Select **Tools**.
 - c. To install a subset of tools, clear the **Tools** check box and select only the individual tools to install.
4. Click **Next**.
5. Complete the remaining instructions and click **Next**.
6. On the Installation Complete page, click **Finish**.
7. On the Installation Manager page, click **Exit**.

VCM Import/Export and Content Wizard Tools

Use the Import/Export Tool and the Content Wizard Tool to move or update VCM business objects. These tools support the migration of any VCM Management Extension for Asset data that was added to VCM manually, but does not import or export any collected data.

The Import/Export Tool supports the following scenarios.

- Back up (export) and restore (import) business objects to the same machine.
- Back up (export) and import (if needed) business objects during a VCM upgrade.
- Export and migrate (import) business objects to additional machines in a multi-Collector environment during setup or to move custom content.
- Use the Content Wizard to download current Compliance Content from VMware and import it into an existing database.
- Using the Command Line Interface, automate the propagation of content to other machines in a multi-collector environment with a “golden machine”.
- Aid in disaster recovery by using the Command Line Interface to automate and schedule the backup of VCM content and configuration parameters.

The Command Line Interface (CLI) is a powerful extension of the Import/Export graphic user interface (GUI). In addition to supporting the scenarios noted above, the CLI allows content to be overwritten, as opposed to “rename only”, and provides for automation through scripting suitable for customizations.

IMPORTANT Use of the CLI should be restricted to advanced users who exercise caution when testing their scripts.

The Import/Export Tool and Content Wizard Tool were installed on your Collector machine during your VCM installation.

Run the Import/Export Tool

Use the Import/Export Tool to back up your VCM database business objects and import them into a new VCM database or into a recovered VCM database. This tool also supports the migration of any VCM Management Extension for Asset data that was manually added to VCM.

Prerequisites

Install the Import/Export Tool. See ["Installing and Getting Started with VCM Tools" on page 19](#).

Procedure

1. On the Collector, click **Start**.
2. Select **All Programs > VMware vCenter Configuration Manager > Tools > Import Export Tool**.
3. For importing and exporting procedures, click **Help > Contents** and use the online help.

Run the Content Wizard to Access Additional Compliance Content

Use the Content Wizard to import additional VMware content such as VCM Compliance Content Packages. These packages are not available in VCM until you download and import them. Check the VCM Compliance Content Packages to determine if you need to import them.

Prerequisites

Install the Content Wizard. See ["Installing and Getting Started with VCM Tools" on page 19](#).

Procedure

1. On the Collector, click **Start**.
2. Select **All Programs > VMware vCenter Configuration Manager > Tools > Content Wizard Tool**.
3. In the Content Wizard, select **Get Updates from the Internet** and click **Next**.
4. After the wizard identifies available content, click **Next**.
5. Select the updates to install on your Collector and click **Install**.

When the installation is finished, the Event Log Results window appears.

6. On the Event Log Results window, click **Save** and specify a location to save the logs.
7. Click **Close**.
8. On the Content Wizard page, click **Exit**.

What to do next

View the imported data in VCM. For example, click **Compliance** and select **Machine Group Compliance > Templates**. You can now run any imported compliance template against your collected data.

Run the Deployment Utility

The Deployment Utility for UNIX/Linux and ESX/vSphere copies files to multiple target machines when you configure UNIX/Linux and ESX/vSphere machines for management in VCM.

Procedure

1. On the Collector, navigate to C:\Program Files (x86)\VMware\VCM\Tools.
2. Copy the DeployUtility-<version>.zip file from the Collector to your Windows machine.
3. Extract the files.
4. Double-click DeployUtil.exe to start the application.

What to do next

In the Deployment Utility, click Help and review the procedure for the type of machine you are configuring.

Package Studio

Use Package Studio to create software packages that can be installed by VCM. It is one component of VCM Software Provisioning that includes the Software Repository for Windows and the Package Manager.

For procedures to run the Package Studio, see the *Software Provisioning Components Installation and User's Guide*.

Foundation Checker

Use the Foundation Checker tool to verify that a Windows machine designated as a VCM Collector meets all of the prerequisites necessary to install VCM.

Installation Manager uses VCM Foundation Checker to check a machine's viability for a successful VCM deployment. Foundation Checker runs system checks that determine various conditions, settings, and requirements, and displays a results file that displays the system checks that passed, failed, or generated warnings.

If the checks run without error, you can install VCM. If the checks identify missing components or incorrect configurations, Foundation Checker instructs you where to verify the component or configuration and how to remedy the errors.

To run the Foundation Checker on a Windows machine on which you will install another instance of VCM, see the *Foundation Checker User's Guide*.

Configuring VMware Cloud Infrastructure

VCM collects information from your instances of vCenter Server, vCloud Director, and vShield Manager so that you can then use the information to manage and maintain your virtual environment.

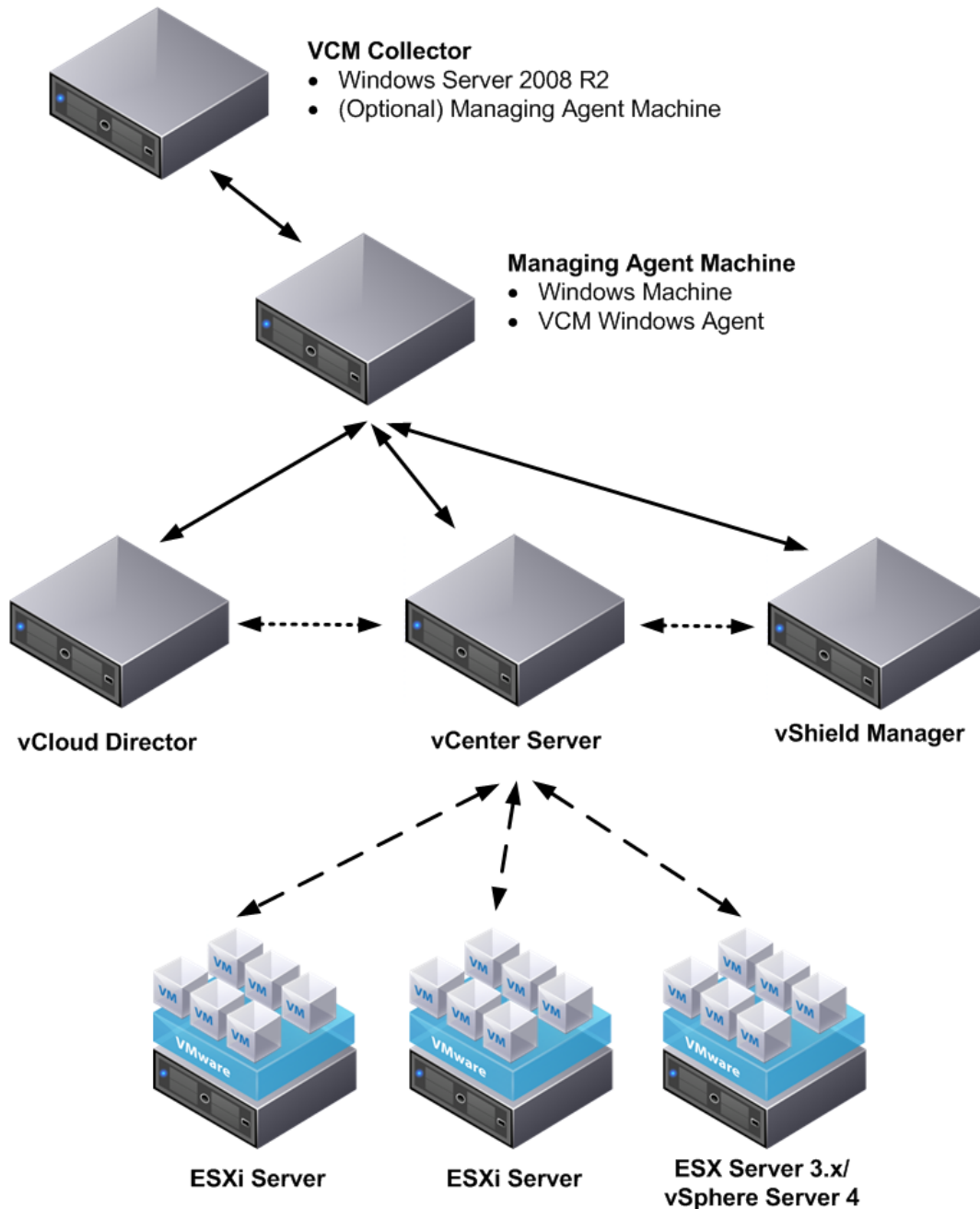
The collected data appears in the Console under the Virtual Environments node. The information is organized in logical groupings based on the information sources, including vCenter Server, vCloud Director, and vShield Manager.

Based on the collected virtual environments data, you can manage the objects and data at an enterprise and individual level, including running compliance rules and reports; running actions, such as changing settings and taking virtual machine snapshots; and managing the guest operating systems as fully managed VCM machines.

Virtual Environments Configuration

To manage your virtual environments, you collect vCenter Server, vCloud Director, and vShield Manager data. To collect the data, you use one or more Managing Agent machines.

After configuring your Managing Agent machines, you add and configure your vCenter Server, vCloud Director, and vShield Manager instances in VCM to use the Managing Agent for communication. For a diagram illustrating how the components are configured together, see [Figure 3–1. Virtual Environments Configuration Diagram](#).

Figure 3–1. Virtual Environments Configuration Diagram

Managing Agents

The Managing Agent machines must have the 5.5 Agent or later installed. They must also be configured to manage the secure communication between the vCenter Server, vCloud Director, and vShield Manager instances and the Collector. Depending on the size of your Cloud Infrastructure environment, you can use your Collector as a Managing Agent or you can use another Windows machine. If your individual vCenter Server instances manage no more than 1–30 hosts and a maximum of 1000 guests, then you can use the Collector as your Managing Agent. If any of your vCenter Server instances exceed this amount, you must use a Windows machine that is not your Collector as a Managing Agent.



CAUTION Do not use the Windows machines on which your vCenter Server instances are running as Managing Agent machines.

Managing vCenter Server Instances, Hosts, and Guest Virtual Machines

You collect data from vCenter Server instances regarding resources managed by the vCenter Server, and to identify and manage the host and guest machines. The host and guest machines are managed based on configured vCenter Server instances. From VCM, you can run vCenter Server actions such as configuring settings, turning the power on and off, or taking a snapshot. To fully manage the guest machines, install the VCM Agent on the virtual machines and manage their operating system.

Managing Instances of vCloud Director and vApp Virtual Machines

You collect data from vCloud Director instances regarding their configurations, resources managed by vCloud Director, and to identify and manage the vApp virtual machine guest operating systems. To fully manage the guest machines, you install the VCM Agent on the virtual machines and manage their operating system.

Managing vShield Manager Instances

You collect from vShield Manager instances to gather data regarding vShield App security groups. You can run reports on the collected data.

Configure Virtual Environments Collections

To manage your virtual environments, configure your Managing Agent and then implement the procedures that suit your environment.

Procedure

1. ["Configure Managing Agent Machines" on page 26](#)

The Managing Agents are one or more physical or virtual machine running a supported Windows operating system that manages the communication between the Collector and your instances of vCenter Server, vCloud Director, and vShield Manager.

2. ["Obtain the SSL Certificate Thumbprint" on page 29](#)

When configuring the settings for your virtual environments systems, you can use an SSL certificate thumbprint file to ensure secure communication between the Collector and your instances of vCenter Server, vCloud Director, and vShield Manager.

3. ["Configure vCenter Server Data Collections" on page 30](#)

Collect data from your vCenter Server so that you can identify and manage your virtual environments, including ESX and ESXi hosts, and guest virtual machines.

4. ["Configure vCenter Server Virtual Machine Collections" on page 33](#)

Configure virtual machine collections so that you can identify and manage the guest operating systems on the vCenter Server virtual machines.

5. ["Configure vCloud Director Collections" on page 35](#)

Configure collections from your vCloud Director instances so that you can run compliance and reports, and identify your vApp virtual machines.

6. ["Configure vCloud Director vApp Virtual Machines Collections" on page 39](#)

Collect vCloud Director data so that you can identify and manage the guest operating systems of the vApp virtual machines.

7. ["Configure vShield Manager Collections" on page 45](#)

Configure collections from your vShield Manager instances so that you can run reports on the collected data.

8. ["Configure ESX Service Console OS Collections" on page 48](#)

The ESX Service Console OS Linux data type data and the ESX logs are collected directly from the ESX operating systems, not from vCenter Server. Configure the ESX servers so that you can collect the Linux data type and ESX log data from the ESX service console operating system.

9. ["Configure the vSphere Client VCM Plug-In" on page 54](#)

The vSphere Client VCM Plug-In provides contextual access to VCM change, compliance, and management functions. It also provides direct access to collected vCenter Server, virtual machine host, and virtual machine guest data.

Configure Managing Agent Machines

The Managing Agents are one or more physical or virtual machine running a supported Windows operating system that manages the communication between the Collector and your instances of vCenter Server, vCloud Director, and vShield Manager.

The Managing Agent machines must have the 5.5 Agent or later installed. They must also be configured to manage the secure communication between the vCenter Server, vCloud Director, and vShield Manager instances and the Collector. Depending on the size of your Cloud Infrastructure environment, you can use your Collector as a Managing Agent or you can use another Windows machine. If your individual vCenter Server instances manage no more than 1–30 hosts and a maximum of 1000 guests, then you can use the Collector as your Managing Agent. If any of your vCenter Server instances exceed this amount, you must use a Windows machine that is not your Collector as a Managing Agent.



CAUTION Do not use the Windows machines on which your vCenter Server instances are running as Managing Agent machines.

Procedure

1. ["Collect Machines Data From the Managing Agent Machines" on page 27](#)

Collect data from your Managing Agent machines to ensure that VCM identifies the Windows machines as licensed and that the 5.5 Agent or later is installed.

2. ["Set the Trust Status for Managing Agent Machines" on page 27](#)

You set the trusted status is on machines where you verify that the connection is legitimate. When you set the trust status, you are marking the Agent certificate as trusted.

3. ["Configure HTTPS Bypass Setting" on page 28](#)

If your Collector is not configured to use HTTPS, you must configure the Collector to allow HTTP communication when entering sensitive parameter values.

4. ["Enable Managing Agent Machines" on page 28](#)

Managing Agent machines must be enabled to perform the necessary communication with your instances of vCenter Server, vCloud Director, and vShield Manager.

Collect Machines Data From the Managing Agent Machines

Collect data from your Managing Agent machines to ensure that VCM identifies the Windows machines as licensed and that the 5.5 Agent or later is installed.

The Managing Agent is the Agent used to collect data from your instances of vCenter Server, vCloud Director and vShield Manager.

Prerequisites

- Verify that the Windows machine that you designated as the Managing Agent is licensed and that it has the VCM Agent 5.5 or later installed. See ["Configuring Windows Machines" on page 71](#).

Procedure

1. Click **Administration**.
2. Select **Machines Manager > Licensed Machines > Licensed Windows Machines**.
3. Select the Managing Agent machines and click **Collect** on the VCM toolbar.
4. On the Collection Type page, select **Machine Data** and click **OK**.
5. On the Machines page, verify that the Selected list includes the Managing Agent machine and click **Next**.
6. On the Data Types page, expand Windows.
7. Select **Machines**, and click **Next**.
8. On the Important page, resolve any conflicts and click **Finish**.
9. When the job finishes, verify that the Agent Version value in the data grid is 5.5 or later.

What to do next

Configure the trust status for the Managing Agents. See ["Set the Trust Status for Managing Agent Machines" on page 27](#).

Set the Trust Status for Managing Agent Machines

You set the trusted status is on machines where you verify that the connection is legitimate. When you set the trust status, you are marking the Agent certificate as trusted.

When you transmit sensitive information, such as credentials, between the Collector and physical or virtual machines on which the Managing Agent is installed, the Agent certificate, including the Agent certificate on the Collector, must be trusted.

If you do not use this level of security, you can set the `Allow sensitive parameters to be passed to agents not verified as Trusted` option to `Yes`. To override the setting, click **Administration** and select **Settings > General Settings > Collector**.

Prerequisites

- Ensure that you collected the Machines data type from the Windows machines you are using as Managing Agents. See ["Collect Machines Data From the Managing Agent Machines" on page 27](#).

Procedure

1. Click **Administration**.
2. Select **Certificates**.
3. Select the Managing Agent machines and click **Change Trust Status**.
4. Add any additional machines to trust to the lower data grid.
5. Select **Check to trust or uncheck to untrust the selected machines** and click **Next**.
6. Review the number of machines affected and click **Finish**.

What to do next

- If your Collector is not configured to use HTTPS, set the HTTPS bypass. See ["Configure HTTPS Bypass Setting" on page 28](#).
- Identify the Windows machines as Managing Agents. See ["Enable Managing Agent Machines" on page 28](#).

Configure HTTPS Bypass Setting

If your Collector is not configured to use HTTPS, you must configure the Collector to allow HTTP communication when entering sensitive parameter values.

If your Collector is configured to use HTTPS, you do not need to modify this setting.

Procedure

1. Click **Administration**.
2. Select **Settings > General Settings > Collector**.
3. Select **Allow HTTP communication (HTTPS bypass) when entering sensitive parameter values** and click **Edit Settings**.
4. Select **Yes** and click **Next**.
5. Review the summary and click **Finish**.

What to do next

Identify the Windows machines as Managing Agents. See ["Enable Managing Agent Machines" on page 28](#).

Enable Managing Agent Machines

Managing Agent machines must be enabled to perform the necessary communication with your instances of vCenter Server, vCloud Director, and vShield Manager.

Prerequisites

- Ensure that the Managing Agent machines are trusted machines. See ["Set the Trust Status for Managing Agent Machines" on page 27](#).
- If your Collector is not configured to use HTTPS, set the HTTPS bypass. See ["Configure HTTPS Bypass Setting" on page 28](#).

Procedure

1. Click **Administration**.
2. Select **Administration > Machines Manager > Licensed Machines > Licensed Windows Machiens**.
3. Select the Managing Agent machines and click **Change Managing Agent Status**.
4. Add any additional machines to the lower data grid.
5. Select **Enable - allow the selected machines to be used as managing agents** and click **Next**.
6. Review the number of machines affected and click **Finish**.

What to do next

- To maintain secure communication, you need the SSL certificates from your instances of vCenter Server, vCloud Director, and vShield Manager. See ["Obtain the SSL Certificate Thumbprint" on page 29](#).
- Configure the collections from your instances of vCenter Server, vCloud Director, and vShield Manager.
 - See ["Configure vCenter Server Data Collections" on page 30](#).
 - See ["Configure vCloud Director Collections" on page 35](#).
 - See ["Configure vShield Manager Collections" on page 45](#).

Obtain the SSL Certificate Thumbprint

When configuring the settings for your virtual environments systems, you can use an SSL certificate thumbprint file to ensure secure communication between the Collector and your instances of vCenter Server, vCloud Director, and vShield Manager.

You can use this procedure to copy and save the thumbprint in advance of configuring the settings, or you can follow the process while you are using the wizard.

This procedure applies when your certificates are not properly trusted. If your certificates are configured and trusted, you must log onto the target machine to retrieve the thumbprint from the certificate store.

Prerequisites

Ensure that you have network access to the target instances of vCenter Server, vCloud Director, and vShield Manager from which you need the thumbprint string.

Procedure

1. Open Internet Explorer.
2. In the address bar, type `https://<your vcenter server, vcloud director, or vshield manager instance>`.
3. On the certificate error page, click **Continue to this website**.
4. On the address bar, click **Certificate Error** and select **View Certificates**.
5. Click the **Details** tab.
6. In the list, select **Thumbprint**.
7. Copy the thumbprint string to your clipboard or to a file so that you can access it when needed.

Configure vCenter Server Data Collections

Collect data from your vCenter Server so that you can identify and manage your virtual environments, including ESX and ESXi hosts, and guest virtual machines.

Prerequisites

- Configure your Managing Agent machines. See ["Configure Managing Agent Machines" on page 26](#).
- To maintain secure communication, you need the SSL certificates from your instances of vCenter Server. See ["Obtain the SSL Certificate Thumbprint" on page 29](#).

Procedure

1. ["Add vCenter Server Instances" on page 30](#)

Add the vCenter Server instances to VCM so that you can license and collect vCenter Server data using the Managing Agent.

2. ["Configure the vCenter Server Settings" on page 31](#)

Configure the Managing Agent, communication, and vCenter Server access options so that VCM can collect host and guest data from the vCenter Server instances.

3. ["Collect vCenter Server Data" on page 32](#)

Collect the vCenter Server, host, and guest data from the vCenter Server instances. The data is displayed by detailed data type and appears in the VCM Console.

The collected vCenter Server data appears in the Console in the Virtual Environments node. The collected vCenter Server data helps you identify and manage vCenter Server, host, and guest objects. See ["vCenter Server Collection Results" on page 33](#).

Add vCenter Server Instances

Add the vCenter Server instances to VCM so that you can license and collect vCenter Server data using the Managing Agent.

In addition to adding the vCenter Server instances, and you can also add the Windows machine on which the vCenter Server is installed and manage the underlying Windows operating system.

Prerequisites

Know the names and domain information for the vCenter Server instances in your environment.

Procedure

1. Click **Administration**.
2. Select **Machines Manager > Available Machines**.
3. Click **Add Machines**.
4. On the Add Machines page, select **Basic: Name, Domain, Type, Automatically license machines**, and click **Next**.
5. On the Manually Add Machines - Basic page, configure these options to identify the vCenter Server instances.

| Option | Description |
|---------|-----------------------------|
| Machine | Name of the vCenter Server. |

| Option | Description |
|--------------|---|
| Domain | Domain to which the vCenter Server belongs. |
| Type | Domain type. |
| Machine Type | Select vCenter (Windows). |

- Click **Add**.
The machine information is added to the list.
- (Optional) Add other vCenter Server instances as needed.
- When all your vCenter Server are added to the list, click **Next**.
- On the Information page, review the summary and click **Finish**.

What to do next

- Configure the vCenter Server settings. See ["Configure the vCenter Server Settings" on page 31](#).
- Manage the Windows operating systems on which vCenter Server instances are running. See ["Configuring Windows Machines" on page 71](#).

Configure the vCenter Server Settings

Configure the Managing Agent, communication, and vCenter Server access options so that VCM can collect host and guest data from the vCenter Server instances.

Prerequisites

- Collect Machines data from the Windows machine that you designated as your Managing Agent. See ["Collect Machines Data From the Managing Agent Machines" on page 27](#).
- If you are using SSL Certificates to maintain secure communication, you must provide the certificate thumbprint from the target system when configuring the settings. See ["Obtain the SSL Certificate Thumbprint" on page 29](#).

Procedure

- Click **Administration**.
- Select **Machines Manager > Licensed Machines > Licensed Virtual Environments**.
- Select the vCenter Server instances and click **Configure Settings**.
- On the Virtual Environment page, verify that the vCenter Server instances appear in the lower pane and click **Next**.
- On the Managing Agent and Communication Settings page, configure the settings that are applied to all selected vCenter Server instances and click **Next**.

| Option | Description |
|----------------|--|
| Managing Agent | Select the Windows machine to manage communication between the Collector and the vCenter Server instances. This Windows machine must have the 5.5 Agent or later installed. |

| Option | Description |
|----------------------------------|---|
| | You can use the Collector as your managing agent. |
| Port | Type the port used by the VMware Infrastructure SDK on the vCenter Server instances. The default value is 443. |
| User ID | Type a vCenter Server instance user name. The user must have a vCenter Server administrative role or an unrestricted read only role. |
| Password | Type the password for the vCenter Server instance user ID. |
| Confirm Password | Type the password again. |
| Ignore untrusted SSL Certificate | Select one of the following certificate options. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Yes: Ignores the requirement for a valid signed certificate. ■ No: Requires a valid signed certificate. |

6. If you selected No on the Managing Agent and Communication Settings page, you must type or paste the thumbprint string in the text box and click **Next**.
7. On the Important page, click **Finish**.

What to do next

Collect vCenter Server data. See ["Collect vCenter Server Data" on page 32](#).

Collect vCenter Server Data

Collect the vCenter Server, host, and guest data from the vCenter Server instances. The data is displayed by detailed data type and appears in the VCM Console.

Prerequisites

Configure the vCenter Server settings. See ["Configure the vCenter Server Settings" on page 31](#).

Procedure

1. Click **Administration**.
2. Select **Machines Manager > Licensed Machines > Licensed Virtual Environments**.
3. Select the vCenter Server instances and click **Collect** on the VCM toolbar.
4. On the Collection Type page, select **Machine Data** and click **OK**.
5. On the Machines page, verify that the Selected list includes all the vCenter Server instances from which you are collecting and click **Next**.
6. On the Data Types page, select the Virtualization vCenter Server data types that you want to collect from the vCenter Server instances and click **Next**.
7. On the Important page, resolve any conflicts and click **Finish**.

What to do next

Review the collected virtualization data. Click **Console** and select **Virtual Environments > vCenter**.

vCenter Server Collection Results

The collected vCenter Server data appears in the Console in the Virtual Environments node. The collected vCenter Server data helps you identify and manage vCenter Server, host, and guest objects.

| Option | Description |
|---------------------------------|--|
| Console | <p>View the Virtual Environments dashboards. Click Console and select Dashboards > Virtual Environments.</p> <p>View the collected vCenter Server data. Click Console and select Virtual Environments > vCenter to access the collected data.</p> <p>View the change logs for the virtual environments. Click Console and select Change Management to access the collected data.</p> |
| Compliance | <p>Access compliance rules that you create based on the collected vCenter Server data using the Virtual Environment Compliance node. You cannot create enforceable compliance rules for vCenter Server data.</p> <p>The compliance rules for the virtual machines you license and on which you install the Agent are managed in the Machine Group Compliance node.</p> |
| Reports | <p>Run configured Virtual Environments reports. Click Reports and select Machine Group Reports > Virtual Environments.</p> <p>Create reports based collected vCloud Director objects. Click Reports and select Virtual Object Reports.</p> |
| Administration | <p>Displays managed vCenter Server instances from which you are collecting data.</p> <p>Click Administration and select Machines Manager > Licensed Machines > Licensed Virtual Environments to view licensed vCenter Server instances.</p> |
| Administration > Machine Groups | <p>Dynamic machine groups based on vCenter Server objects. These objects include instances, hosts, and guest machines, and are used to limit the displayed data.</p> |

Configure vCenter Server Virtual Machine Collections

Configure virtual machine collections so that you can identify and manage the guest operating systems on the vCenter Server virtual machines.

VCM manages virtual machines as guest machines and as Windows, Linux, or UNIX machines. To manage the virtual machines as guest machines, you collect vCenter Guests data from your vCenter Server. To manage the virtual machines based on operating system, you license, install the VCM Agent, and collect data directly from the managed machines.

You can identify the virtual machines in your environment two ways.

- Collect vCenter Guests data from your vCenter Servers and manage the virtual Windows, Linux, or UNIX machines. See ["Collect vCenter Server Virtual Machines Data" on page 34](#).
- Manually discover Windows Machines or add Linux or UNIX machines. For Windows machines, see ["Discover Windows Machines" on page 73](#). For Linux or UNIX machines, see ["Add UNIX/Linux Machines" on page 108](#).

Collect vCenter Server Virtual Machines Data

Identify and license your virtual machines that are identified based on collected vCenter Guests data.

Prerequisites

Manage your vCenter Servers in VCM. See ["Configure vCenter Server Data Collections" on page 30](#).

Procedure

1. Click **Administration**.
2. Select **Machines Manager > Available Machines > Licensed Virtual Environments**.
3. Select the vCenter Servers and click **Collect** on the VCM toolbar.
4. On the Collection Type page, select **Machine Data** and click **OK**.
5. On the Machines page, verify that the Selected list includes all the vCenter Servers from which you are collecting and click **Next**.
6. On the Data Types page select **Virtualization > vCenter Guests** and click **Next**.
7. On the Important page, resolve any conflicts and click **Finish**.

What to do next

License your virtual machines. See ["Manage vCenter Server Virtual Machines " on page 34](#).

Manage vCenter Server Virtual Machines

Add and license the virtual machines identified based on a vCenter Guests collection from your vCenter Servers. If you are managing Windows virtual machines, you can also install the VCM Agent.

Using the Manage Guests wizard, you can add the virtual machines to the appropriate Available Machines data grid based on operating system, license the virtual machine based on operating system, or, for Windows machines, license and install the Agent.

Prerequisites

Collect vCenter Guests data from your vCenter Servers. See ["Collect vCenter Server Virtual Machines Data" on page 34](#).

Procedure

1. Click **Console**.
2. Select **Virtual Environments > vCenter > Guests > Summary**.
3. Select either your Windows virtual machines or your UNIX/Linux virtual machines and click **Manage Guests**.
4. On the Default Domain page, configure the options and click **Next**.
 - a. Specify the Domain in which the machines are running.
 - b. Select the Domain Type.

5. On the Edit VM Guest Machine Info page, review the list and update or remove virtual machines, and click **Next**.
6. On the License VM Guests page, configure the options and click **Next**.
 - a. Select **License the selected machines**.
 - b. (Windows machines only) Select **Install VCM agents for the selected Windows machines**, and click **Next**.
7. On the Confirm Your Changes page, review the changes and click **Finish**.

What to do next

- For Windows operating system guest machines on which you installed the Agent, collect from the Windows virtual machines. See ["Collect Windows Data" on page 84](#). If you did not install the Agent, see ["Install the VCM Windows Agent on Your Windows Machines" on page 77](#).
- For UNIX/Linux operating system guest machines you must install the Agent. See ["Install the Agent on UNIX/Linux Machines" on page 109](#).

Configure vCloud Director Collections

Configure collections from your vCloud Director instances so that you can run compliance and reports, and identify your vApp virtual machines.

Prerequisites

- Configure your Managing Agent machines. See ["Configure Managing Agent Machines" on page 26](#).
- To maintain secure communication, you need the SSL certificates from your instances of vCloud Director. See ["Obtain the SSL Certificate Thumbprint" on page 29](#).

Procedure

1. ["Add vCloud Director Instances" on page 35](#)

Add the instances of vCloud Director to VCM so that you can license and collect vCloud Director data using the Managing Agent.

2. ["Configure the vCloud Director Settings" on page 36](#)

Configure the Managing Agent, communication, and vCloud Director access options so that VCM can collect virtual machine data from your instances of vCloud Director.

3. ["Collect vCloud Director Data" on page 37](#)

Collect the data from the instances of vCloud Director. The data is displayed by detailed data type and appears in the VCM Console.

The collected vCloud Director data appears in the Console in the Virtual Environments node. The data helps you identify and manage vApp virtual machines. See ["vCloud Director Collection Results" on page 38](#).

Add vCloud Director Instances

Add the instances of vCloud Director to VCM so that you can license and collect vCloud Director data using the Managing Agent.

In addition to adding the instances of vCloud Director, and you can also add the Red Hat machine on which the vCloud Director instance is installed and manage the underlying Red Hat operating system.

Prerequisites

Know the names and domain information for the instances of vCloud Director in your environment.

Procedure

1. Click **Administration**.
2. Select **Machines Manager > Available Machines**.
3. Click **Add Machines**.
4. On the Add Machines page, select **Basic: Name, Domain, Type, Automatically license machines**, and click **Next**.
5. On the Manually Add Machines - Basic page, configure these options to identify the instances of vCloud Director.

| Option | Description |
|--------------|---|
| Machine | Name of the vCloud Director instance. |
| Domain | Domain to which the vCloud Director instance belongs. |
| Type | Domain type. |
| Machine Type | Select vCloud Director. |

6. Click **Add**.
The machine information is added to the list.
7. (Optional) Add other instances of vCloud Director as needed.
8. When all your instances of vCloud Director are added to the list, click **Next**.
9. On the Information page, review the summary and click **Finish**.

What to do next

- Configure the vCloud Director settings. See ["Configure the vCloud Director Settings" on page 36](#).
- Manage the Red Hat operating systems on which your vCloud Director instances are running. See ["Configuring Linux and UNIX Machines" on page 107](#).

Configure the vCloud Director Settings

Configure the Managing Agent, communication, and vCloud Director access options so that VCM can collect virtual machine data from your instances of vCloud Director.

Prerequisites

- Collect Machines data from the Windows machine that you designated as your Managing Agent. See ["Collect Machines Data From the Managing Agent Machines" on page 27](#).
- If you are using SSL Certificates to maintain secure communication, you must provide the certificate thumbprint from the target system when configuring the settings. See ["Obtain the SSL Certificate Thumbprint" on page 29](#).

Procedure

1. Click **Administration**.
2. Select **Machines Manager > Licensed Machines > Licensed Virtual Environments**.
3. Select the vCloud Director instances and click **Configure Settings**.
4. On the Virtual Environment page, verify that the vCloud Director instances appear in the lower pane and click **Next**.
5. On the Managing Agent and Communication Settings page, configure the settings that are applied to all selected vCloud Director instances and click **Next**.

| Option | Description |
|----------------------------------|--|
| Managing Agent | Select the Windows machine to manage communication between the Collector and the vCloud Director instances. This Windows machine must have the 5.5 Agent or later installed. You can use the Collector as your managing agent. |
| Port | Type the port used by the API on the vCloud Director instance. The default value is 443. |
| User ID | Type a vCloud Director instance user name. The user must have a vCloud Director administrative role or an unrestricted read only role. Use a full vCloud Director administrative user, such as administrator@system. |
| Password | Type the password for the vCloud Director instance user ID. |
| Confirm Password | Type the password again. |
| Ignore untrusted SSL Certificate | Select one of the following certificate options. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Yes: Ignores the requirement for a valid signed certificate. ■ No: Requires a valid signed certificate. |

6. If you selected No on the Managing Agent and Communication Settings page, you must type or paste the thumbprint string in the text box and click **Next**.
7. On the Important page, click **Finish**.

What to do next

Collect vCloud Director data. See ["Collect vCloud Director Data" on page 37](#).

Collect vCloud Director Data

Collect the data from the instances of vCloud Director. The data is displayed by detailed data type and appears in the VCM Console.

Prerequisites

Configure the vCloud Director settings. See ["Configure the vCloud Director Settings" on page 36](#).

Procedure

1. Click **Administration**.
2. Select **Machines Manager > Licensed Machines > Licensed Virtual Environments**.
3. Select the vCloud Director instances and click **Collect** on the VCM toolbar.
4. On the Collection Type page, select **Machine Data** and click **OK**.
5. On the Machines page, verify that the Selected list includes all the vCloud Director instances from which you are collecting and click **Next**.
6. On the Data Types page, select the Virtualization vCloud Director data type that you want to collect from the vCloud Director instances and click **Next**.
7. On the Important page, resolve any conflicts and click **Finish**.

What to do next

Review the collected virtualization data. Click **Console** and select **Virtual Environments > vCloud Director**.

Discover the vApp virtual machines created by the vCloud Director and make them available in VCM. See ["Discover vCloud Director vApp Virtual Machines" on page 41](#).

vCloud Director Collection Results

The collected vCloud Director data appears in the Console. The discovered virtual machines appear on Administration. After you license the virtual machines and install the Agent, you manage them based on their operating system.

The displayed data is only as current as the last time you collected data from your vCloud Director instances and from your managed machines.

| Option | Description |
|------------|---|
| Console | View collected vCloud Director instance data. Click Console and select Virtual Environments > vCloud Director . View the change logs for the virtual environments. Click Console and select Change Management to access the collected data. |
| Compliance | Access compliance rules that you create based on the collected vCloud Director data using the Virtual Environment Compliance node. You cannot create enforceable compliance rules for vCloud Director data. The compliance rules for the virtual machines that you license and on which you install the Agent are managed in the Machine Group Compliance node. |
| Reports | Run a configured vCloud Director report. Click Reports and select Machine Group Reports > Virtual Environments > vCloud Director Managed VMs . The report includes the vCloud Director Instance, Organization, Organization virtual datacenter, vApp Name, the VC Machine Name, and the related networking data. Create reports based collected vCloud Director objects. Click Reports and select Virtual Object Reports . |

| Option | Description |
|---------------------------------|--|
| Administration | <p>Displays managed vCloud Director instances from which you are collecting data. Click Administration and select Machines Manager > Licensed Machines > Licensed Virtual Environments.</p> <p>Displays the discovered virtual machines with a machine name that is based on your configuration options in the discovery rule.</p> <p>For example, OrgName:vAppName:VirtualMachineName.</p> <p>Click Administration and select Machines Manager.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ If the machines are not licensed and the Agent is not installed, the machines appear in the Available Machines data grid based on the operating system. ■ If the machines are licensed and the Agent is installed, the machines appear in the Licensed Machines data grid based on the operating system. |
| Administration > Machine Groups | Dynamic machine groups based on vCloud Director objects, including instances and guest machines, are used to limit the displayed data. |

Configure vCloud Director vApp Virtual Machines Collections

Collect vCloud Director data so that you can identify and manage the guest operating systems of the vApp virtual machines.

To accommodate how vCloud Director manages vApps, which can include duplicate names, IP addresses, and MAC addresses, VCM collects and displays internal and external IP address information, internal machine name information, and vCenter machine name information collected directly from vCloud Director. Based on the collected data, you determine how VCM constructs a unique virtual machine name and specify which IP address to use based on the network address translation (NAT) mapping level.

To identify the vCloud Director virtual machines, you configure discovery rules that analyze data collected from the vCloud Director REST API and use the vApp virtual machine information to add new virtual machines to VCM. After installing the Agent and licensing the virtual machines, you manage the new machines based on their operating systems. The machines appear in VCM based on your configured naming convention.

Network Address Translation and vCloud Director vApp Discovery Rules

To configure the connection string when creating a vCloud Director virtual machines discovery rule, you must know how network address translation (NAT) is implemented in your vCloud Director instances.

The vCloud Director administrator configures the NAT mapping. How the virtual machines are configured with NAT and where VCM is in the network determines the connection string that VCM uses to communicate with the virtual machines.

vCloud Director 1.0 and 1.5 support a variety of vApp network configurations. VCM supports these scenarios.

- VCM is located in the vApp with the virtual machines that it is managing.
- The vApp has a direct connection to the org network.
- The vApp has a direct connection to the external network.
- The vApp has a one-to-one IP address NAT connection to the organization network with direct connection to the external network.
- The vApp has a one-to-one IP address NAT connection to the organization network with a one one-to-one IP address NAT connection to the external network.
- The vApp has a direct connection to the organization network with one IP address to one IP address NAT connection to the external network.

VCM does not support one to many IP addresses NAT mapping for vCloud Director vApp virtual machines.

To determine the connection string to use when discovering the vCloud Director virtual machines, you must know where VCM is located in the network and how NAT is implemented.

Table 3–1. Determining the Connection String Based on Network Configuration

| Location of VCM or the Proxy Server on the Network | External Network | Organization Network | Discovery Rule Connection String |
|--|--------------------------|---|----------------------------------|
| In the managed vApp | NA | NA | Internal IP |
| On Org Network | NA | Direct connection. | None (use DNS) or Internal IP |
| On Org Network | NA | NAT at vApp level. | vApp External IP |
| On External Network | Direct Connection | Not connected or direct connection. | Internal IP |
| On External Network | Direct from Organization | NAT at vApp level. | vApp External IP |
| On External Network | NAT at Org level | The vApp level IP is collected from vCloud Director, but it is not used for the VCM connection. | Org External IP |

After you collect the vCloud Director data, you can view the internal and external IP addresses in network information for the virtual machines.

Best Practice

VCM cannot use DCOM to communicate with vCloud Director vApp virtual machines across NAT mapped networks.

In a NAT mapped network environment, your best practice is to install the Agent on the vApp template machines. You must manually install the Agent with the HTTP mode enabled, but you must not collect data from these template machines. Collecting from the template machines generates machine-specific information that will cause the virtual machines created from the template to run incomplete collections.

If you discovered NAT mapped vApp virtual machines that do not have the Agent preinstalled on the templates from which they were created, you must manually install the Agent. The Agent must be installed with the HTTP protocol enabled. See ["Manually Install the VCM Windows Agent" on page 78](#).

Discover vCloud Director vApp Virtual Machines

To begin managing the vCloud Director vApp virtual machines, create and run a VCM discovery rule. The rule runs against the collected vCloud Director data in the VCM database.

Prerequisites

- Collect vCloud Director data. You can run the discovery only on the collected data. See [Collect vCloud Director Data](#).
- Determine how NAT is used in your vCloud Director network and where VCM is located in relationship to the network. See ["Network Address Translation and vCloud Director vApp Discovery Rules" on page 39](#).

Procedure

1. Click **Administration**.
2. Select **Machines Manager > Discovery Rules**.
3. On the data grid toolbar, click **Add**.
4. On the Discovery Rules page, type a Name and Description, and click **Next**.
5. On the Discovery Method page, select **By DB Discovery** and click **Next**.
6. On the Discovery Query page, in the Discovery Query drop-down menu, select **vCloud Director Managed VMs** and click **Next**.
7. On the Discovery Query Parameters page, configure the options to use when discovering and adding the data to VCM and click **Next**.

| Option | Description |
|---------------------|--|
| Machine Name Format | <p>Select the format used to display the virtual machine name.</p> <p>You can select the vCenter name for the virtual machine or select a combination of names for the virtual machine that includes the vApp that contains the virtual machine, the vCloud Director organization, and the vCloud Director instance. With these formats, you can easily sort, group, and display the data in VCM. The composite name is limited to 128 characters.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ VCName: Name of the virtual machine in vCenter. vCloud Director creates the virtual machine and generates the name of the virtual machine, which includes the machine's host name and the 10-digit identification number of the virtual machine in vCenter. This name is unique in a single vCloud Director instance. ■ vApp:VCName: Name of the vApp that contains the virtual machine and the name of the virtual machine in vCenter. ■ vDC:vApp:VCName: Name of the virtual datacenter with the vApp name and the name of the virtual machine in vCenter. |

| Option | Description |
|------------------------|--|
| | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Org:vDC:vApp:VCName: Name of the vCloud Director organization with the virtual datacenter name, the name of the vApp that contains the virtual machine, and the name of the virtual machine in vCenter. <li>■ Cloud:Org:vDC:vApp:VCName: Name of the vCloud Director instance with the name of the vCloud Director organization, the virtual datacenter name, the name of the vApp that contains the virtual machine, and the name of the virtual machine in vCenter. |
| Machine Name Delimiter | Select a character to separate the elements of the vCloud Director hierarchy that you use as the machine name. |
| Domain Name | Type or select the domain in which you are managing the virtual machines. |
| Domain Type | Select the type of domain to which you are adding the virtual machines. |
| Protocol | Select the protocol by which the Collector will communicate with the Agent. If the virtual machines in the vApp uses NAT mapping, you must select HTTP. If the virtual machines do not use NAT, you can use HTTP or DCOM. |
| HTTP Port | If you selected the HTTP protocol, you must specify the port used to communicate with the Collector. Uses the HTTP Listener on the target machine. The listener is configured to listen on the designated port. Port 26542 is the default setting. Accepted port values range from 1–65535. Other applications should not use this port. |

| Option | Description |
|--------------------|---|
| Use a proxy server | <p>Select Yes if you use a proxy server for communication between the Collector and the Agents on the virtual Windows machines.</p> <p>Select No if you do not use a proxy server or if you are managing UNIX/Linux machines.</p> <p>If the machines you add are Windows machines, you can select a proxy server for communication between the Collector and the Agents on managed machines that are located on the other side of a proxy server. The proxy server routes requests from the Collector to the Agents on managed machines. A proxy server can only be used with Windows HTTP agents.</p> |
| Connection String | <p>Select the IP address to use when communicating with the virtual machines.</p> <p>This address can differ from the address that resolves by machine name from DNS or other name resolution systems. Use this address when VCM must contact a vApp virtual machine through a Network Address Translation (NAT) address, or when DNS available to the Collector cannot resolve the vApp virtual machines.</p> <p>If the virtual machines that appear in the console as part of your vCloud Director collections are not added as part of your database discovery of vCloud Director data, ensure that the internal or external connection string is valid for the virtual machines. If the connection string is set to External IP, you will discover only machines with external IP addresses.</p> <p>The connection string depends on the type and level at which NAT mapping is configured.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ None (use DNS): The Collector resolves the IP address to the virtual machine based on the configured name resolution mechanisms. For example, DNS or Hosts. ■ Internal IP: The IP address that the virtual machine has in the vApp. ■ vApp External IP: The IP address external to the vApp addresses of the virtual machines that are configured with NAT at the vApp level. ■ Org External IP: The IP address external to the organization addresses of the virtual machines that are configured with NAT at the organization level or at the organization and vApp level. If NAT is implemented at the vApp and organization level, select this option. |
| Cloud Name Filter | <p>To run the query against all system resources in a vCloud Director instance, type the name of the vCloud Director instance.</p> <p>SQL wildcard expressions are allowed.</p> <p>Discovers all virtual machines managed by the vCloud Director instance.</p> |
| Org Name Filter | <p>To run the query against an organization in a vCloud Director instance, type the name of the organization.</p> <p>SQL wildcard expressions are allowed.</p> <p>Discovers all virtual machines in the organization.</p> |
| vDC Name Filter | <p>To run the query against a virtual datacenter in a vCloud Director instance, type the name of the virtual datacenter.</p> <p>SQL wildcard expressions are allowed.</p> |

| Option | Description |
|---------------------|---|
| | Discovers all virtual machines in the virtual datacenter. |
| vApp Name Filter | To run the query against a vApp, type the name of the vApp. SQL wildcard expressions are allowed. Discovers all virtual machines in the vApp. |
| VM Name Filter | To run the query to add a specific virtual machine, type the name of the machine. SQL wildcard expressions are allowed. Discovers the virtual machine. |
| Network Name Filter | To run the query against resources on a particular network, type the name of the network. SQL wildcard expressions are allowed. Discovers all virtual machines on the network. |
| IP Address Filter | To run the query to add virtual machines with a particular IP address, type the address. SQL wildcard expressions are allowed. Discovers all virtual machines with that IP address. |
| Include IP update | Select Yes to include the properties of this discovery rule to update the connection string information for the discovered machines when new vCloud Director data is collected. Select No to not update the connection string information. |

8. On the Important page, select the options and click **Finish**.

| Option | Description |
|--|---|
| Would you like to run this Discovery Rule now? | Select Yes . |
| License and Install Agent on Discovered Machines | If you do not use NAT mapping, select the option to install the Agent. If you use NAT mapping, you must manually install the Agent on the discovered machines. |

What to do next

- Review the discovery jobs to determine if your job finished. Click **Administration** and select **Job Manager > History > Other Jobs**.
- Review the collected vCloud Director vApp virtual machine data. Click **Administration** and select **Machines Manager**. In **Available Machines** and **Licensed Machines**, select the operating system type and review the list for the added virtual machines.
- If the discovered machines are listed only in the Available Machines list and the virtual machines use NAT mapping, you must manually install the Agent appropriate for the operating system. For Windows operating systems, see ["Manually Install the VCM Windows Agent" on page 78](#). For Linux or UNIX operating systems, see ["Install the Agent on UNIX/Linux Machines" on page 109](#).

Configure vShield Manager Collections

Configure collections from your vShield Manager instances so that you can run reports on the collected data.

Prerequisites

- Configure your Managing Agent machines. See ["Configure Managing Agent Machines" on page 26](#).
- To maintain secure communication, you need the SSL certificates from your instances of vShield Manager. See ["Obtain the SSL Certificate Thumbprint" on page 29](#).

Procedure

1. ["Add vShield Manager Instances" on page 45](#)

Add the instances of vShield Manager to VCM so that you can license and collect vShield Manager data using the Managing Agent.

2. ["Configure the vShield Manager Settings" on page 46](#)

Configure the Managing Agent, communication, and vShield Manager access options so that VCM can collect group and group member data from your instances of vShield Manager.

["Collect vShield Manager Data" on page 47](#)

3. Collect the data from the instances of vShield Manager. The data is displayed by detailed data type and appears in the VCM Console.

The collected vShield Manager data appears in the Console in the Virtual Environments node. See ["vShield Manager Collection Results" on page 48](#).

Add vShield Manager Instances

Add the instances of vShield Manager to VCM so that you can license and collect vShield Manager data using the Managing Agent.

Most vShield Manager instances are discovered, added, and licensed. Use this procedure if they are not added to VCM.

Prerequisites

- Ensure that the vCenter Server that each instance of vShield Manager is managing is added to VCM. See ["Add vCenter Server Instances" on page 30](#).
- Know the names and domain information for the instances of vShield Manager in your environment.

Procedure

1. Click **Administration**.
2. Select **Machines Manager > Available Machines**.
3. Click **Add Machines**.
4. On the Add Machines page, select **Basic: Name, Domain, Type, Automatically license machines**, and click **Next**.
5. On the Manually Add Machines - Basic page, configure these options to identify the instances of vShield Manager.

| Option | Description |
|--------------|--|
| Machine | Name of the instance of vShield Manager. |
| Domain | Domain to which the instance of vShield Manager belongs. |
| Type | Domain type. |
| Machine Type | Select vShield. |

6. Click **Add**.

The machine information is added to the list.

7. (Optional) Add other instances of vShield Manager as needed.

8. When all your instances of vShield Manager are added to the list, click **Next**.

9. On the Information page, review the summary and click **Finish**.

What to do next

Configure the vShield Manager settings. See ["Configure the vShield Manager Settings" on page 46](#).

Configure the vShield Manager Settings

Configure the Managing Agent, communication, and vShield Manager access options so that VCM can collect group and group member data from your instances of vShield Manager.

Prerequisites

- Collect Machines data from the Windows machine that you designated as your Managing Agent. See ["Collect Machines Data From the Managing Agent Machines" on page 27](#).
- If you are using SSL Certificates to maintain secure communication, you must provide the certificate thumbprint from the target system when configuring the settings. See ["Obtain the SSL Certificate Thumbprint" on page 29](#).

Procedure

1. Click **Administration**.
2. Select **Machines Manager > Licensed Machines > Licensed Virtual Environments**.
3. Select the instances of vShield Manager and click **Configure Settings**.
4. On the Virtual Environment page, verify that the vShield Manager instances appear in the lower pane and click **Next**.
5. On the Managing Agent and Communication Settings page, configure the settings that are applied to all selected vShield Manager instances and click **Next**.

| Option | Description |
|----------------|--|
| Managing Agent | Select the Windows machine to manage communication between the Collector and the vShield Manager instances. This Windows machine must have the 5.5 Agent or later installed. You can use the Collector as your managing agent. |

| Option | Description |
|----------------------------------|---|
| Port | Type the port used by the API on the vShield Manager instances. The default value is 443. |
| User ID | Type a vShield Manager instance user name. The user must have a vShield Manager administrative role or an unrestricted read only role. |
| Password | Type the password for the vShield Manager instance user ID. |
| Confirm Password | Type the password again. |
| Ignore untrusted SSL Certificate | Select one of the following certificate options. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Yes: Ignores the requirement for a valid signed certificate. ■ No: Requires a valid signed certificate. |
| Select vCenter for vShield | Select the vCenter Server instance managed by this vShield Manager instance. |

6. If you selected No on the Managing Agent and Communication Settings page, you must type or paste the thumbprint string in the text box and click **Next**.
7. On the Important page, click **Finish**.

What to do next

Collect vCloud Director data. See ["Collect vShield Manager Data" on page 47](#).

Collect vShield Manager Data

Collect the data from the instances of vShield Manager. The data is displayed by detailed data type and appears in the VCM Console.

Prerequisites

Configure the vShield Manager settings. See ["Configure the vShield Manager Settings" on page 46](#).

Procedure

1. Click **Administration**.
2. Select **Machines Manager > Licensed Machines > Licensed Virtual Environments**.
3. Select the vShield Manager instances and click **Collect** on the VCM toolbar.
4. On the Collection Type page, select **Machine Data** and click **OK**.
5. On the Machines page, verify that the Selected list includes all the vShield Manager instances from which you are collecting and click **Next**.
6. On the Data Types page, select the Virtualization that you want to collect from the vShield Manager instances and click **Next**.
7. On the Important page, resolve any conflicts and click **Finish**.

What to do next

Review the collected virtualization data. Click **Console** and select **Virtual Environments > vCloud Director**.

Discover the vApp virtual machines created by the vCloud Director and make them available in VCM. See ["Discover vCloud Director vApp Virtual Machines" on page 41](#).

vShield Manager Collection Results

The collected vShield Manager data appears in the Console and is available to generate reports.

The displayed data is only as current as the last time you collected data from your vShield Manager instances.

| Option | Description |
|---------------------------------|--|
| Console | Displays collected vShield Manager instance data. Click Console and select Virtual Environments > vCloud Director . |
| Reports | Create and run configured vShield Manager reports. |
| Administration | Displays managed vShield Manager instances from which you are collecting data. Click Administration and select Machines Manager > Licensed Machines > Licensed Virtual Environments to view licensed vShield Manager instances. |
| Administration > Machine Groups | Dynamic machine groups based on vShield App instances security group membership and are used to limit the displayed data. |

Configure ESX Service Console OS Collections

The ESX Service Console OS Linux data type data and the ESX logs are collected directly from the ESX operating systems, not from vCenter Server. Configure the ESX servers so that you can collect the Linux data type and ESX log data from the ESX service console operating system.

To collect the data, VCM uses an Agent Proxy rather than a VCM Agent installed directly on the ESX and ESXi machines. To support the Agent Proxy, you must copy required files and certificates on the ESX and ESXi servers to manage the data collection from those machines.

Perform the required tasks first for ESX servers, and then for ESXi servers.

1. ["Configure the Collector as an Agent Proxy" on page 49](#)

The Agent Proxy machine is a Windows machine configured to communicate with ESX and ESXi servers and to remotely collect data from those servers. The Collector automatically meets the Agent Proxy requirements. You license the Collector and then collect the Machines data type.

2. ["Configure Virtual Machine Hosts" on page 50](#)

License virtual machine hosts to generate a file containing machine names and settings. You use the generated file to configure the ESX machines for management in VCM.

3. ["Copy Files to the ESX/ESXi Servers" on page 51](#)

To import target machine information and copy the required files from VCM, you use the

4. ["Collect ESX Logs Data" on page 53](#)

An initial collection of Virtual Environments data identifies your virtual machine hosts and their guest machines.

You have several options for reviewing and using ESX Logs data in VCM. The data used is only as current as the last collection, and the amount of time it takes for the data to display is based on the volume or complexity of the data requested. See ["Virtualization Collection Results" on page 53](#).

Configure the Collector as an Agent Proxy

The Agent Proxy machine is a Windows machine configured to communicate with ESX and ESXi servers and to remotely collect data from those servers. The Collector automatically meets the Agent Proxy requirements. You license the Collector and then collect the Machines data type.

NOTE If you manage more than fifty host machines, you must use a separate Windows machine as your Agent Proxy. Moving the Agent Proxy activity to the separate machine optimizes performance. See "Configuring Standalone Agent Proxy Machines" in the online Help.

Procedure

1. Click **Administration**.
2. Select **Machines Manager > Licensed Machines > Licensed Windows Machines**.
3. Determine whether the Collector machine name appears in the data grid.

If it is listed in the data grid, the machine is licensed. If it is not listed, continue with the licensing process.
4. License the Collector.
 - a. Select **Machines Manager > Available Machines**.
 - b. Select the Collector in the data grid and click **License**
 - c. On the Machines page of the Available Machines License wizard, verify that the Collector machine name appears in the Selected list and click **Next**.
 - d. Review the Product License Details page and click **Next**.
 - e. Review the Important page and click **Finish**.
 - f. Select **Administration > Machines Manager > Licensed Machines > Licensed Windows Machines** to verify that the Collector is now licensed.
 - g. Click **Refresh** on the Console toolbar to update the data.
5. Run a collection for machines data to identify the Collector as an available Windows machine.
 - a. Select **Machines Manager > Licensed Windows Machines**, select the Collector in the data grid, and click **Collect** on the Console toolbar.
 - b. On the Collection Type page, click **Machine Data** and click **OK**.
 - c. On the Machines page, verify that the Collector machine name appears in the Selected list.

- d. Click **Select Data Types to collect from these machines** and click **Next**.
- e. On the Data Types page, expand the Windows tree and select **Machines**.
- f. Select **Use default filters** and click **Next**.
- g. Review the Important page and click **Finish**.

The collection job starts. You can use the Job Manager to determine when the collection is finished.

What to do next

- When the collection is completed, verify that the Collector machine Agent Proxy State equals Current Agent. Click **Administration** and select **Machines Manager > Agent Proxies** and review the data grid.
- License and configure the target virtual machine hosts. See ["Configure Virtual Machine Hosts" on page 50](#).

Configure Virtual Machine Hosts

License virtual machine hosts to generate a file containing machine names and settings. You use the generated file to configure the ESX machines for management in VCM.

All Virtualization data types are collected through Web Services communication except for the VM Logs, which are collected through SSH and only from ESX machines.

Prerequisites

- Verify that at least one Agent Proxy machine is configured. See ["Configure the Collector as an Agent Proxy" on page 49](#).

Procedure

1. Click **Administration**.
2. Select **Machines Manager > Licensed Machines > Licensed ESX/ESXi Hosts**.
3. Select the ESX host and click **Configure Settings**.
4. Add the machines to be configured to the lower grid and click **Next**.

The selected machines will use the same Agent Proxy and the same SSH and Web Services settings.

5. Configure the settings on the Agent Proxy and Communication Setting page.

| Option | Description |
|-----------------------|---|
| Agent Proxy | <p>The configured Agent Proxy used to manage the selected virtual machine host machines.</p> <p>This option is required when you are licensing host machines, but it is optional if you are modifying the settings.</p> |
| SSH Settings | <p>Select the check box to configure the settings for your ESX machines. Configure these settings so that you can collect ESX Logs data from the managed host machines.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Port: Used by VMware Web Services SDK for the ESX server on which SSH listening. The Agent Proxy communicates with the ESX server using this port. The default port (22) is set to the default value for SSH on ESX. ■ User ID: Used by the Agent Proxy to communicate with the ESX server through SSH. This account must have certain permissions, for example, <code>sudoers</code>, defined in the installation process. Authentication for this account uses public key cryptography that was setup during the installation process. |
| Web Services Settings | <p>(Optional) Select the check box to configure the settings for your ESX and ESXi machines. Configure the settings to collect virtual environment data from a host machine.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Port: The port on the ESX server used by the Agent Proxy to communicate with the VMware web services interface. ■ User ID: The account that has access to the VMware Web services interface. If you are using ESX, this account must have Administrator access to Web services on the ESX server. This user ID may be different from the user ID for SSH communication, depending on whether you created different accounts during the ESX installation process. ■ Password: The password for the Web services User ID specified above. This password is encrypted in the VCM database. ■ Confirm Password: Retype the password. ■ Ignore untrusted SSL Certificate: Connection allowed even when certificates are not verified as trusted. |

6. On the Important page, record the `.xml` file name.

The file is saved to the location configured for `CMFiles$VMHosts_Config`. The default location is `\Program Files (x86)\VMware\VCM\WebConsole\L1033\Files\VMHosts_Config`.

7. Click **Finish**.

What to do next

Copy the copy SSH public key file, the `csiprep.py` file, and the `csiprep.config` file to the target ESX machines. See ["Copy Files to the ESX/ESXi Servers" on page 51](#).

Copy Files to the ESX/ESXi Servers

To import target machine information and copy the required files from VCM, you use the UNIX/ESX/vSphere Deployment Utility on your Agent Proxy machines.

For ESX machines, you import target machine information from VCM and copy the SSH public key file, the `csiprep.py` file, and the `csiprep.config` file to the target ESX machines.

For ESXi machines, you import machine information and copy the necessary Web Services settings to the target machines.

Prerequisites

- License the ESX and ESXi machines. See ["Configure Virtual Machine Hosts" on page 50](#).
- Locate the UNIX/ESX/vSphere Deployment Utility file in `C:\Program Files (x86)\VMware\VCM\Tools\DeployUtility-<version number>`. Consult the Deployment Utility online help when using the tool.

Procedure

1. Copy the UNIX/ESX/vSphere Deployment Utility file to the Agent Proxy machine, either a standalone Windows machine or the Collector, and unzip the file.
2. Double-click `DeployUtil.exe` to start the Deployment Utility.
3. Click the **ESX/vSphere Configuration** tab.
4. Click **File > Open**.
5. Browse to the location of the virtual machine hosts configuration file generated when you licensed and configured the virtual machine hosts.

The default location on the Collector is `\Program Files (x86)\VMware\VCM\WebConsole\L1033\Files\VMHosts_Config`.

6. Select the `.xml` file and click **Open**.

The machine information in the `.xml` file is imported into the **ESX Server Settings** table on the **ESX/vSphere Configuration** tab with the settings that you defined in VCM.

7. Select a configuration option.

| Option | Description |
|---------------------------|--|
| Configure ESX 3.x Servers | Configures the SSH certificate, the <code>csiprep.py</code> file, the <code>csiprep.config</code> file, and passes the SSH and Web Services user information to the target ESX machines. |
| Configure ESXi Servers | Passes the Web Services to the target ESX machines |

8. (Optional) Configure the default server location.

The following settings are automatically configured to the default server locations. If you need to change the paths, click the ellipsis button.

- SSH Public Key file (ESX 3.x only)
- Log Files Location
- `csiprep.py` File (ESX 3.x only)
- `csiprep.config` File (ESX 3.x only)

9. (Optional) Configure the VCM user name and password.

To modify the settings in VCM, use the following options or manually change the values in the ESX Server Settings table. For more information about the settings, see the Deployment Utility online Help.

- Use the same user name for both SSH and Web Services collections (ESX 3.x only).
- Use the same password for all WebServices users.
- Apply the same user names and passwords to all ESX servers.

10. Click **Configure**.

All the machines where the **Configure** check box is selected now have the same version of the files copied to the location specified in the Remote Path field in the table. If no path is specified, the files are copied to the /tmp directory.

What to do next

Collect data from the target virtual machine hosts. See ["Collect ESX Logs Data" on page 53](#).

Collect ESX Logs Data

An initial collection of Virtual Environments data identifies your virtual machine hosts and their guest machines.

Procedure

1. On the Portal toolbar, click **Collect**.
2. Select your ESX Servers.

To avoid configuration conflicts, do not select both for one action. The selected machines appear in the Selected list.

3. Click **Select Data Types to collect from these machines** and click **Next**.
4. Expand the UNIX node and select the **Machines - General** data type.
5. Expand the Virtualization node and select the **ESX Logs** data types.
6. Click **Use default filters** and click **Next**.
7. Click **Finish**.

Monitor the collection job in Job Manager. When the collection is completed, the data appears is available for reports and compliance assessments.

What to do next

Review the collected data in the Console, run reports, configure alerts, and use the machine groups. See ["Virtualization Collection Results" on page 53](#).

Virtualization Collection Results

You have several options for reviewing and using ESX Logs data in VCM. The data used is only as current as the last collection, and the amount of time it takes for the data to display is based on the volume or complexity of the data requested.

| Option | Description |
|---------|---|
| Console | View ESX logs. Click Console and select Virtual Environments > ESX Logs . |

Configure the vSphere Client VCM Plug-In

The vSphere Client VCM Plug-In provides contextual access to VCM change, compliance, and management functions. It also provides direct access to collected vCenter Server, virtual machine host, and virtual machine guest data.

When using the vSphere Client VCM Plug-In, the virtual machine host name in vCenter must match the virtual machine host name in VCM.



CAUTION Anyone accessing VCM and the vSphere Client must have a unique login. Do not share vSphere Client logins between VCM users. Do not share vSphere Client logins between VCM users and non-VCM users.

Procedure

1. ["Register the vSphere Client VCM Plug-In" on page 54](#)

The registration process configures the URL in the VMware vSphere Client to the VCM Collector and makes the **VCM Summary** and **VCM Actions** tabs available in the vSphere Client.

2. ["Configuring the vSphere Client VCM Plug-In Integration Settings" on page 55](#)

Configure integration settings in VCM for your vSphere Client VCM Plug-In users. The settings enable users to view the VCM reports.

3. ["Manage Machines from the vSphere Client" on page 56](#)

vSphere Client-managed machines are available in the vSphere Client VCM Plug-In when they licensed and have the VCM Agent installed. The available actions include collecting new data and running compliance, patching, and reports for the selected machines.

Register the vSphere Client VCM Plug-In

The registration process configures the URL in the VMware vSphere Client to the VCM Collector and makes the **VCM Summary** and **VCM Actions** tabs available in the vSphere Client.

The plug-in is installed with VCM. To unregister a previous version of the plug-in, see [Upgrade the .](#)

IMPORTANT The account that you use to register the vSphere Client VCM Plug-In should be a local administrator on the vSphere instance. The account must connect to a machine that has a valid SSL certificate or must register an invalid certificate (for example, a development certificate) when that user logs into the vSphere Client.

Prerequisites

- Verify that you are using VMware vCenter 4 Server.
- Verify that the VMware vSphere Client is installed.
- Verify that the VMware Tools is installed on the virtual machines.

Procedure

1. On the VCM Collector, browse to [path]\VMware\VCM\Tools\vSphere Client VCM Plugin\bin and double-click VCVPIInstaller.exe.
2. In the VCVPI Plug-in Registration dialog box, configure the following options.

| Option | Description |
|-----------------------------------|--|
| Register | Select the option to register the URL for the plug-in. Select Unregister only if you are discontinuing the use of the plug-in on the target vSphere Client. |
| Server URL | Type the http or https path, where <server> is your vSphere Client server. |
| Administrator User Name | Type the name of a user with Administrator privileges in the vSphere Client. |
| Administrator Password | Type the associated password. |
| URL to vSphereClientVCMPlugin.xml | Type the http path, where <VCMserver> is the name or IP address for the VCM Collector. The xml file is located in \VMware\VCM\WebConsole\L1033\VCVPIAnon\Xml\vSphereClientVCMPlugin.xml |

3. Click **OK**.
4. Start VCM.
5. On the login screen, select the role that you are using to log into the vSphere Client VCM Plug-In.
6. Select the **Automatically log in using this role** check box.
7. Start the vSphere Client.
8. Select a Guest machine.

What to do next

- Confirm that you can access the **VCM Summary** and **VCM Actions** tabs.
- Configure the vSphere Client VCM Plug-In integration settings in VCM. See ["Configuring the vSphere Client VCM Plug-In Integration Settings" on page 55](#).

Configuring the vSphere Client VCM Plug-In Integration Settings

Configure integration settings in VCM for your vSphere Client VCM Plug-In users. The settings enable users to view the VCM reports.

Prerequisites

Verify that the vSphere Client VCM Plug-In is registered. See ["Register the vSphere Client VCM Plug-In" on page 54](#).

Procedure

1. Select **Administration > Settings > Integrated Products > VMware > vSphere Client VCM Plug-In**.
2. Select the setting that you want to configure and click **Edit Settings**.
3. On the Settings Wizard page for each setting, configure the options.

| Option | Description |
|--|--|
| Machine group against which the external reports will be run | Type the name of the machine group. The default value is All Machines. |
| Role to use for external report access | Type the name of the user role to be used to access the reports. The default value is Read-Only. Users other than Admin must have the role selected here in order to see reports in the vSphere Client. |
| User name to use for assessments | Type the name of the user who will be running assessments to obtain data for generating reports. |

4. Click **Next**.
5. Verify your settings and click **Finish**.

What to do next

You manage machines by running compliance, patching, and reports. See ["Manage Machines from the vSphere Client" on page 56](#).

Manage Machines from the vSphere Client

vSphere Client-managed machines are available in the vSphere Client VCM Plug-In when they licensed and have the VCM Agent installed. The available actions include collecting new data and running compliance, patching, and reports for the selected machines.

Prerequisites

- License Windows and UNIX/Linux virtual machines. See ["License Windows Machines" on page 74](#) and ["License UNIX/Linux Machines" on page 109](#).
- Install the Agent on the virtual machine. See ["Install the VCM Windows Agent on Your Windows Machines" on page 77](#) and ["Install the Agent on UNIX/Linux Machines" on page 109](#).
- Verify that the integration settings are configured. See ["Configuring the vSphere Client VCM Plug-In Integration Settings" on page 55](#).

Procedure

1. Start the vSphere Client.
2. Click the **VCM Actions** tab.

What to do next

Click help on the **VCM Actions** tab for more information about the actions.

Troubleshooting the vSphere Client VCM Plug-In Registration

With the vSphere Client VCM Plug-In, you can view and run certain VCM actions in the vSphere Client.

You can use troubleshooting options to identify and resolve any problems.

Invalid Certificate on a vSphere Client

The vSphere Client connects to the vCenter Server using the SSL certificate and displays the datacenters, hosts, and any clusters.

Problem

When logging into a vSphere Client for the first time, if the certificate is not valid, a security warning about the SSL certificate appears.

Cause

The certificate is not valid.

Solution

1. Select the **Install this certificate and do not display any security warnings for <vCenter_Server_Instance>** option.
2. Click **Ignore**.

HTTPS/SSL Is Not Configured on the Collector

If the **VCM Summary** and **VCM Actions** tabs are not displayed, the settings are improperly configured.

Problem

In the vSphere Client, you cannot see the **VCM Summary** or **VCM Actions** tabs.

Cause

If **Use SSL** was selected during VCM installation, the https/SSL is not properly configured on the Collector.

Solution

1. Open the `.xml` file specified during the registration.
2. Edit the file to reflect the configured connection method, either http or https.

vSphere Client VCM Plug-In Is Not Enabled

If the **VCM Summary** and **VCM Actions** tabs are not displayed, the plug-in is not properly configured.

Problem

In the vSphere Client, you cannot see the **VCM Summary** or **VCM Actions** tabs.

Cause

The plug-in is not enabled in the vSphere Client.

Solution

1. In the vSphere Client, select **Plug-ins > Manage Plug-ins**.
2. In the **Installed Plug-ins** area, right-click the vCenter Configuration Manager Extension plug-in, and select **Enable**.
3. Close the Plug-in Manager.

When the tabs appear, you are ready to use the vSphere Client VCM Plug-In.

Running Compliance for the VMware Cloud Infrastructure

4

Compliance templates evaluate the virtual environment object data to determine if the objects meets the criteria in the rules. If the property values on an object do not meet the criteria, and if there is no exception defined, then the object is flagged as noncompliant. When an object is non compliant, the template results provide the details of the settings or configurations that do not match the rules. You can use this information to resolve the issue.

Compliance templates include the following components:

- **Rule Groups:** The rule groups comprise rules and filters.
- **Rules:** The rules define the optimal configuration standard.
- **Filters:** The filters limit the objects on which the template runs to only the objects that meet the filter criteria. If filters are not defined, the rules are run against all objects in the virtual objects group.
- **Exceptions:** The exceptions are optional temporary or permanent exceptions to the template results. The defined exception indicates that a specific result is compliant or noncompliant even though it does not match the requirements of the rules.

Create and Run Virtual Environment Compliance Templates

Create compliance templates that evaluate your virtual environment object data to determine if the objects meet the criteria in the rules that define objects as compliant or noncompliant.

The example used in this procedure is whether VMware Tools is running on guest virtual machines on all vCenter Server instances, but excluding vCenter_Dev.

Prerequisites

Collect virtual environments data. See ["Configure Virtual Environments Collections" on page 25](#).

Procedure

1. ["Create Virtual Environment Compliance Rule Groups" on page 60](#)
Create rule groups so that you can add rules and filters.
2. ["Create and Test Virtual Environment Compliance Rules" on page 60](#)
Create rules that define the ideal value that objects should have to be considered compliant.
3. ["Create and Test Virtual Environment Compliance Filters" on page 61](#)
Create filters that limit the objects on which the templates run to only the objects that meet the filter criteria.

4. ["Preview Virtual Environment Compliance Rule Groups" on page 62](#)

Preview the rule group to ensure that your combination of rules and filters are returning the expected results. Use the rules preview action, with the filters turned off and then turned on to determine if a rule group is returning the expected results.

5. ["Create Virtual Environment Compliance Templates" on page 63](#)

Create compliance templates that include one or more rule groups configured to assess your selected object group to determine which objects are compliant and noncompliant.

6. ["Run Virtual Environment Compliance Templates" on page 64](#)

Run templates against your collected data to determine which objects are compliant or noncompliant.

7. (Optional) ["Create Virtual Environment Compliance Exceptions" on page 64](#)

Create exceptions so that you can temporarily or permanently override specific template results.

Create Virtual Environment Compliance Rule Groups

Create rule groups so that you can add rules and filters.

Templates can include one or more rule groups. Rule groups comprise rules and filters.

The example used in this procedure is whether VMware Tools is running on guest virtual machines on all vCenter Server instances, but excluding vCenter_Dev.

Procedure

1. Click **Compliance**.
2. Select **Virtual Environment Compliance > Rule Groups**.
3. Click **Add**.
4. Type the Rule Group Name and Description in the text boxes and click **OK**.

For example, Guest Tools Running and a description.

What to do next

Add a rule to the rule group. See ["Create and Test Virtual Environment Compliance Rules" on page 60](#).

Create and Test Virtual Environment Compliance Rules

Create rules that define the ideal value that objects should have to be considered compliant.

The data types correspond to the collected virtual environments data that is displayed in the Console. To identify the values you are configuring for compliance, review the data grids so that you can locate the correct data type in the rule wizard.

The example used in this procedure is whether VMware Tools is running on guest virtual machines on all vCenter Server instances, but excluding vCenter_Dev.

Prerequisites

Create a rule group. See ["Create Virtual Environment Compliance Rule Groups" on page 60](#).

Procedure

1. Click **Compliance**.
2. Select **Virtual Environment Compliance > Rule Groups > rule group name > Rules**.
Guest Tools Running is the rule group in this example.
3. Click **Add**.
4. Type the Name and Description in the text boxes and click **Next**.
For example, Tools Running.
5. Expand **Virtualization**, select **vCenter - Guests - Summary**, and click **Next**.
The collected guest summary data includes whether the VMware Tools is installed and running on the guest virtual machines.
6. Select **Basic** and click **Next**.
7. Click Add and configure the rules with the ideal values.
 - In the properties drop-down menu, select **Tools Running Status**.
 - Select = as the rule operator.
 - Click the ellipsis button and select **guestToolsRunning** and click **OK**.
 - Click **Next**.
8. Select the Severity of a failure in the drop-down menu and click **Next**.
9. Review the changes and click **Finish**.
The rule is added to the data grid.
10. Select your new rule and click **Preview**.
11. Select **Do not apply machine filters to preview** and click **OK**.
When you test a rule, test first without the filter to ensure that the rule returns the expected results.
12. Review the data in the Non-compliant results window to verify that your rule is behaving as expected.

What to do next

Add a filter to the rule group. See ["Create and Test Virtual Environment Compliance Filters" on page 61](#).

Create and Test Virtual Environment Compliance Filters

Create filters that limit the objects on which the templates run to only the objects that meet the filter criteria. If filters are not defined, the rules are run against all objects in the selected virtual objects group.

The example used in this procedure is whether VMware Tools is running on guest virtual machines on all vCenter Server instances, but excluding vCenter_Dev.

Prerequisites

- Create a rule group. See ["Create Virtual Environment Compliance Rule Groups" on page 60](#).
- Create a rule. See ["Create and Test Virtual Environment Compliance Rules" on page 60](#).

Procedure

1. Click **Compliance**.
2. Select **Virtual Environment Compliance > Rule Groups > rule group name > Filters**.
Guest Tools Running is the rule group in this example.
3. Click **Add**.
4. Type the Name and Description in the text boxes and click **Next**.
For example, Not vCenter_Dev
5. Expand **Virtualization**, select **vCenter - Guest - Summary**, and click **Next**.
The collected guest summary data includes vCenter names.
6. Select **Basic** and click **Next**.
7. Click **Add** and configure the filter with the values to limit assessed objects or to exclude objects from assessment.
 - In the properties drop-down menu, select **vCenter**.
 - Select \Leftrightarrow as the filter operator.
 - Click the ellipsis and select **vCenter_Dev** and click **OK**.
 - Click **Next**.
8. Review the changes and click **Finish**.
The filter is added to the data grid.
9. Select your new filter and click **Preview**.
10. Review the data in the Machines window to verify that your filter is behaving as expected.

What to do next

Test your rule and filter together. See ["Preview Virtual Environment Compliance Rule Groups" on page 62](#).

Preview Virtual Environment Compliance Rule Groups

Preview the rule group to ensure that your combination of rules and filters are returning the expected results. Use the rules preview action, with the filters turned off and then turned on to determine if a rule group is returning the expected results.

The example used in this procedure is whether VMware Tools is running on guest virtual machines on all vCenter Server instances, but excluding vCenter_Dev.

Prerequisites

- Create a rule group. See ["Create Virtual Environment Compliance Rule Groups" on page 60](#).
- Create a rule. See ["Create and Test Virtual Environment Compliance Rules" on page 60](#).
- Create compliance filters. See ["Create and Test Virtual Environment Compliance Filters" on page 61](#).

Procedure

1. Click **Compliance**.
2. Select **Virtual Environment Compliance > Rule Groups**.
Guest Tools Running is the rule group in this example.
3. Select your new rule group and click **Preview**.
4. Select **Do not apply machine filters to preview** and click **OK**.
When you test a rule, test first without the filter to ensure that the rule returns the expected results.
5. Review the data in the Non-compliant results window to verify that your rule is behaving as expected.
6. Close the window.
7. Select your new rule group and click **Preview**.
8. Select **Apply machine filters to preview** and click **OK**.
9. Review the data in the Non-compliant results window to verify that your rule is behaving as expected.
If the results are incorrect, adjust your rules and filters until they work correctly when you preview them.

What to do next

- If you have more than one rule that you must run in a particular order, set the order. The Set Order option is located on the toolbar.
- Create a template. See ["Create Virtual Environment Compliance Templates" on page 63](#).

Create Virtual Environment Compliance Templates

Create compliance templates that include one or more rule groups configured to assess your selected object group to determine which objects are compliant and noncompliant.

The example used in this procedure is whether VMware Tools is running on guest virtual machines on all vCenter Server instances, but excluding vCenter_Dev.

Prerequisites

Create a rule group. See ["Create and Test Virtual Environment Compliance Rules" on page 60](#).

Procedure

1. Click **Compliance**.
2. Select **Virtual Environment Compliance > Templates**.
3. Click **Add**.
4. Type the Name and Description in the text boxes and click **Next**.
For example, Tools Running Not vCenter_Dev and a description.
5. Move the rule group, for this example, Guest Tools Running, to the list on the right and click **Next**.
6. Select **Return both compliant and non-compliant** and click **Next**.
Returning complaint and noncompliant results will help you determine whether your template is returning the correct results.
7. Review your changes and click **Finish**.

What to do next

Run the template. See ["Run Virtual Environment Compliance Templates" on page 64](#).

Run Virtual Environment Compliance Templates

Run templates against your collected data to determine which objects are compliant or noncompliant.

When a compliance template is run, the results appear in a report format and a data grid format.

The example used in this procedure is whether VMware Tools is running on guest virtual machines on all vCenter Server instances, but excluding vCenter_Dev.

Prerequisites

Create a template. See ["Create Virtual Environment Compliance Templates" on page 63](#).

Procedure

1. Click **Compliance**.
2. Select **Virtual Environment Compliance > Templates**.
3. Select your template in the data grid and click **Run**.
In this example, select Tools Running Not vCenter_Dev.
4. Click **OK**.
5. When the template run is finished, click **Close**.
6. Double-click the template name in the data grid.

Unless you turned off the summary view, the Virtual Environments Compliance Results report appears. The report includes the number of objects that are compliant and the number that are noncompliant.

7. To view the results in the data grid, click **View data grid**.

What to do next

- If you find results that you want to temporarily make compliant or noncompliant, create an exception. See ["Create Virtual Environment Compliance Exceptions" on page 64](#).
- Evaluate the results and resolve any issues on the noncompliant objects.

Create Virtual Environment Compliance Exceptions

Create exceptions so that you can temporarily or permanently override specific template results.

The exceptions are defined against the template results and indicate that a specific result is compliant or noncompliant even though it does not match the requirements of the rules.

You can add exceptions only to existing templates.

The example used in this procedure is whether VMware Tools is running on guest virtual machines on all vCenter Server instances, but excluding vCenter_Dev.

To create an exception in this example, a virtual machine, RHEL_60_ProdDev, is approved to be excluded from the noncompliant results because you never require VMware Tools to be running on this machine.

Prerequisites

Create a template. See ["Create Virtual Environment Compliance Templates" on page 63](#).

Procedure

1. Click **Compliance**.
2. Select **Virtual Environment Compliance > Templates > template name**.
3. Select the noncompliant result on which you are basing the exception and click **Add Exception**.

In this example, the noncompliant result is the RHEL_60_ProdDev guest machine.

4. Type the Name, Short Description, Description, and Sponsor in the text boxes and click **Next**.
5. Select the template to which you are applying the exception in the drop-down menu and click **Next**.

For this example, select Tools Running Not vCenter_Dev.

6. Select the object group to which you are applying the exception and click **Next**.

For this example, select All Virtual Objects.

7. Select the override options and the expiration date.

- Select **Override non-compliant results to compliant**.
- Select **No Expiration**.
- Click **Next**.

8. To define the exception values, modify, delete, or add to the properties, operators, and values for the selected results.

In this example, you are specifying the RHEL_60_ProdDev as the exception.

- Click **Add**.
- In the properties drop-down menu, select **Object**.
- Select = as the rule operator.
- Click the ellipsis button and select **RHEL_60_ProdDev** in the property values dialog box and click **OK**.
- Click **Finish**.

What to do next

Run the template. See ["Run Virtual Environment Compliance Templates" on page 64](#).

Configuring vCenter Operations Manager Integration

5

Integration of VCM with vCenter Operations Manager reports VCM configuration changes in the vCenter Operations Manager console. You configure the data types to report to vCenter Operations Manager and the threshold reporting level used to roll up the configuration changes. VCM records configuration changes in the change log regardless of whether you reported the data to vCenter Operations Manager. From vCenter Operations Manager, you can navigate to VCM to view the details.

Configure vCenter Operations Manager with VCM

You configure the data types to report to vCenter Operations Manager and the threshold reporting level used to roll up the configuration changes. VCM records configuration changes in the change log regardless of whether you reported the data to vCenter Operations Manager. From vCenter Operations Manager, you can navigate to VCM to view the details.

You can report on UNIX and Windows configuration change data and VCM initiated reboot changes. VCM reports change data to vCenter Operations Manager by default. vCenter Operations Manager polls VCM for configuration changes every 5 minutes.

The following procedure configures VCM to report a UNIX data type to vCenter Operations Manager and sets the threshold reporting level to roll up a defined number of configuration changes into a single reporting icon to report the changes in the vCenter Operations Manager console.

Procedure

1. In VCM, click **Administration**.
2. Select **Settings > Integrated Products > VMware > vCenter Operations Manager**.
3. Configure VCM to report a UNIX data type, such as UNIX Patch Assessment, to vCenter Operations Manager.
 - a. Select **UNIX Patch Assessment - Report to vCenter Operations Manager**, and click **Edit Setting**.
 - b. Click **Yes** to report the data.
 - c. Click **Next** and **Finish**.
4. Set the threshold reporting level to roll up the configuration changes in the vCenter Operations Manager console.
 - a. Select **UNIX Patch Assessment - Rollup Threshold**, and click **Edit Setting**.
 - b. Type the number of configuration changes for the collection to roll up into a single reporting icon to report in vCenter Operations Manager.
 - c. Click **Next** and **Finish**.

For details about the reporting settings, see the VCM online help.

Auditing Security Changes in Your Environment

6

The VCM Auditing capability tracks all changes in the security aspects of VCM. Security-related events are written to the Windows Event Log, which is stored on the Collector, and is independent of the VCM application. The format of the event log prohibits any modifications to the recorded entries, which makes it a secure and tamper-proof auditing record of changes in security.

When you perform an action in VCM that affects security, and the auditing setting that corresponds to that change is enabled, the event is written to the event log.

Prerequisite

Be logged in as a user who has the Admin role assigned.

Procedure

1. To view the VCM Auditing settings, click **Administration**.
2. Select **Settings > General Settings > Auditing**.
3. To change an auditing setting, highlight a setting and click **Edit Setting**.

When you change an auditing setting, the VCM Auditing data grid displays the user's name in the Last Modified By column.

What to do next

For details about the Auditing settings and the Windows Event Log, see the online help.

Configuring Windows Machines

To manage your virtual and physical Windows machines, you must verify domains and accounts, discover and license those machines, install the VCM Agent, and collect Windows data from those machines. You can also collect Windows Custom Information.

Procedure

1. [Verify Available Domains](#)

Allow VCM access to each domain so that the VCM Collector can interact with the Windows machines in your environment.

2. [Check the Network Authority](#)

Verify that at least one domain account with administrator privileges is available to act as a network authority account for VCM.

3. [Assign Network Authority Accounts](#)

Select and assign the network authority account that you identified for VCM access to the Windows machines.

4. [Discover Windows Machines](#)

In your network, identify the Windows machines that you are managing with VCM.

5. [License Windows Machines](#)

To manage Windows machines, you must license them in VCM.

6. [Disable User Account Control for VCM Agent Installation](#)

Disable User Account Control (UAC) on Windows 7, 2008, 2008 R2, and Vista target machines before you install the VCM Agent.

7. [Install the VCM Windows Agent on Your Windows Machines](#)

Install the VCM Windows Agent on each Windows machine so that you can collect data and manage the virtual or physical machines.

8. [Enable UAC After VCM Agent Installation](#)

Enable User Account Control (UAC) on Windows 7, 2008, 2008 R2, and Vista machines after you install the VCM Agent.

9. [Collect Windows Data](#)

Start managing the Windows machines by performing an initial collection, which adds Windows machine data to VCM.

Continuous Windows machine management is based on the latest data you collect from target machines. You can view data and run actions, such as reports or compliance, based on the collected data. See ["Windows Collection Results" on page 85](#).

Verify Available Domains

Allow VCM access to each domain so that the VCM Collector can interact with the Windows machines in your environment.

During installation, VCM discovered all domains to which the network authority account had access. If the Windows machines belong to a domain that is not listed, you must add that domain manually.

Prerequisites

Verify that you have the fully-qualified names of the domains to manage.

Procedure

1. Click **Administration**.
2. Select **Settings > Network Authority > Available Domains**.
3. If the domain does not appear Available Domains view, add the domain.
 - a. Click **Add**.
 - b. Type the domain name and select the domain type as **NetBios** or **AD**, depending on your domain.
 - c. Click **OK**.
4. Verify that the domain appears in the data grid.

What to do next

Verify that a network authority account is available and create other necessary domain accounts. See ["Check the Network Authority" on page 72](#).

Check the Network Authority

Verify that at least one domain account with administrator privileges is available to act as a network authority account for VCM.

Although you specified an initial default network authority account when you installed VCM, you can add different administrator accounts if you do not assign the default account.

Prerequisites

Verify the presence of domains. See ["Verify Available Domains" on page 72](#).

Procedure

1. Click **Administration**.
2. Select **Settings > Network Authority > Available Accounts**.
3. To add a new domain account, click **Add**.
4. Type the domain name, user name, and password, and click **Next**.
5. Click **Finish** to add the account.

What to do next

Assign the network authority account to the domain so that VCM can access the Windows machines in the domain. See ["Assign Network Authority Accounts" on page 73](#).

Assign Network Authority Accounts

Select and assign the network authority account that you identified for VCM access to the Windows machines.

You can assign a single account to all domains and machine groups, or assign a unique account or multiple accounts to each domain and machine group.

In this procedure, NetBios is used as the example.

Prerequisites

Verify or add the necessary network authority account. See ["Check the Network Authority" on page 72](#).

Procedure

1. Click **Administration**.
2. Select **Settings > Network Authority > Assigned Accounts > By Domain > NetBios**.
3. Select an assigned account.
4. Click **Edit Assigned Accounts**.
5. Select the account to receive authority to the domain and click **Next**.
6. Confirm the accounts to include in the authority list for the domain and click **Finish**.

What to do next

Discover the Windows machines in your environment. See ["Discover Windows Machines" on page 73](#).

Discover Windows Machines

In your network, identify the Windows machines that you are managing with VCM.

To discover the available Windows machines, VCM uses general discovery rules to identify many Windows machines or uses specific discovery rules to identify particular Windows machines.

The time required to perform an initial discovery depends on the size and composition of your network. If all Windows machines are not available during initial discovery, such as systems that are disconnected from the network, the first discovery will not find all Windows machines. If the discovery does not identify all Windows machines, you might need to run additional discoveries after the other Windows machines become available.

NOTE You can use the Discovered Machines Import Tool (DMIT), which imports machines discovered by the Network Mapper (Nmap), to import many physical and virtual machines at one time into the VCM database. Download DMIT from the VMware Web site.

The following procedure is based on Active Directory.

Prerequisites

Assign a Network Authority Account that VCM can use for access. See ["Assign Network Authority Accounts" on page 73](#).

Procedure

1. Click **Administration**.
2. Select **Machines Manager > Discovery Rules**.
3. Click **Add** to create a discovery rule.
4. On the Discovery Rules page, type a name and description and click **Next**.
5. On the Discovery Method page, select **By Active Directory** and click **Next**.
6. On the AD Domain page, specify the AD Domain, select **Discover machines only from the selected domain**, and click **Next**.
7. On the Discovery Filters page, select **Discover all machines in <domain_name> Domain**.
8. (Optional) Create a filter to discover Windows machines based on a limited criteria and click **Next**.
9. On the Important page, click **Yes** and click **Finish**.
To avoid exceeding your license count, do not select **License and Install Agent on Discovered Machines**.
10. On the toolbar, click **Jobs** to track current discovery job status.

What to do next

- Verify that jobs have finished running. Click **Administration** and select **Job Manager > History > Other Jobs > Past 24 Hours**.
- Verify that the Windows machines are available. Click **Administration** and select **Machines Manager > Available Machines**.
- License the Windows machines in your environment. See ["License Windows Machines" on page 74](#).

License Windows Machines

To manage Windows machines, you must license them in VCM.

The number of discovered Windows, UNIX, or Linux machines might exceed the number of your available licenses. If that happens, the number available goes negative and appears in red to indicate that you do not have enough licenses.

You can license more servers or workstations than your license key allows. Any license key counts that exceed the number of licenses provided by your license key are recorded and maintained for future auditing purposes.

Prerequisites

Verify that the Windows machines you license are listed with a machine type of workstation or server in the Available Machines node. If the discovered or added type is not workstation or server, VCM cannot license the machines.

Procedure

1. Click **Administration**.
2. Select **Machines Manager > Available Machines**.
3. Select the Windows machines to license.
4. Click **License**.
5. Verify that the Windows machines to license appear in the Selected list.
Use the arrows to move the Windows machines.
6. Click **Next** to view your Product License Details.
The licensed Windows machine count increases by the number of licensed machines.
7. Click **Next**.
VCM confirms that the licenses you requested will be applied to the selected Windows machines.
8. Click **Finish**.

What to do next

Disable User Account Control (UAC) on the Windows 7, 2008, 2008 R2, or Vista machines in your environment. See ["Disable User Account Control for VCM Agent Installation" on page 75](#).

Disable User Account Control for VCM Agent Installation

Disable User Account Control (UAC) on Windows 7, 2008, 2008 R2, and Vista target machines before you install the VCM Agent.

The UAC setting on Windows 7, 2008, 2008 R2, and Vista machines prevents VCM from installing the Agent on these target machines. You can disable UAC on a single Windows machine or a group of machines.

- ["Disable User Account Control for a Windows Machine" on page 75](#)
- ["Disable User Account Control By Using Group Policy" on page 76](#)

Disable User Account Control for a Windows Machine

The User Account Control (UAC) on Windows 7, 2008, 2008 R2, or Vista machines prevents VCM from installing the Agent on the target machines. Before you install the Agent on a Windows 7, 2008, 2008 R2, or Vista machine, you must disable the UAC, and then re-enable UAC after you finish the installation.

In this procedure, disabling UAC on a Windows 2008 R2 machine is used as the example.

Procedure

1. On the target Windows 2008 R2 machine, click **Start > Run**.
2. In the Run dialog box, type **msconfig** and click **OK**.
3. In the User Account Control dialog box, click **Continue**.

4. In the System Configuration dialog box, click the **Tools** tab.
5. In the Tool Name list, select **Disable UAC**.
6. Click **Launch**.
7. When the command is finished running, click **Close** and click **Close** again.
8. Restart the Windows machine to apply the changes.

What to do next

Install the VCM Windows Agent on licensed Windows machines in your environment, and then enable UAC on the target machine. See ["Install the VCM Windows Agent on Your Windows Machines" on page 77](#).

Disable User Account Control By Using Group Policy

The User Account Control (UAC) on Windows 7, 2008, 2008 R2, and Vista machines prevents VCM from installing the Agent on the target machines. You can use a group policy to disable UAC on the Windows machines in your environment.

The following procedure is performed on a Windows 2008 R2 domain controller machine.

Prerequisites

Configure Windows 7, 2008, 2008 R2, and Vista machines that are targeted for the Agent installation into a common Active Directory domain or organizational unit (OU).

Procedure

1. On your Windows 2008 R2 domain controller, click **Start** and select **Administrative Tools > Group Policy Management**.
2. Click **Forest** and select **Domains > your local domain > Default Domain Policy**.
3. In the Default Domain Policy pane, click the **Settings** tab.
4. Right-click **Policies** and click **Edit**.
5. In the Console Root, expand the domain/OU.
6. Click **Computer Configuration** and select **Policies > Windows Settings > Security Settings > Local Policies > Security Options**.
7. In the right pane, locate the **User Access Control** policies and configure the following policies and their policy settings.

| Policy | Policy Setting |
|--|----------------------------|
| User Account Control: Behavior of the elevation prompt for administration in Admin Approval Mode | Elevate without prompting. |
| User Account Control: Detect application installations and prompt for elevation | Disabled. |
| User Account Control: Run all administrators in Admin Approval Mode | Disabled. |

8. Restart the domain controller machine to apply the changes.

What to do next

Install the VCM Windows Agent on licensed Windows machines in your environment, and then re-enable the group policy on the domain controller. See "[Install the VCM Windows Agent on Your Windows Machines](#)" on page 77.

Install the VCM Windows Agent on Your Windows Machines

Install the VCM Windows Agent on each Windows machine so that you can collect data and manage the virtual or physical machines.

Before you can collect data from Windows machines, you must install the VCM Windows Agent on the licensed Windows machines in your environment to enable communication between the Collector and the target machines.

You can use VCM to install the Agent or you can install the Agent manually. When you install a VCM Collector, the VCM Windows Agent is also installed. The Collector Agent is locked and cannot be unlocked, uninstalled, or upgraded.

Standardized Windows configurations such as Federal Desktop Core Configuration (FDCC) or United States Government Configuration Baseline (USGCB) include strict security group policy settings. The **Windows Firewall: Do not Allow Exceptions** group policy configures Windows Firewall to block all unsolicited incoming messages, including configured exceptions. This setting overrides all configured exceptions. For VCM to communicate properly with the VCM Agent on managed machines in strict, secure environments, disable the **Windows Firewall: Do not Allow Exceptions** group policy on the managed machines. For more information, see support.microsoft.com.

Prerequisites

- License the Windows machines on which you install the Agent. See "[License Windows Machines](#)" on page 74.
- Disable UAC before you install the Agent on Windows 7, 2008, 2008 R2, or Vista machines. See "[Disable User Account Control for VCM Agent Installation](#)" on page 75.
- Verify that you know the communication protocols and ports that are used by the Collector and the Agents.

Procedure

1. Click **Administration**.
2. Select **Machines Manager > Licensed Machines > Licensed Windows Machines**.
3. In the data grid, select one or more Windows machines on which to install the Agent and click **Install**.
4. On the Machines page, verify that the target machines appear in the Selected list and click **Next**.
5. On the Install Options page, select the installation options and click **Next**.

| Option | Description |
|--------------|--|
| Share | Location to install the Agent. The default location is ADMIN\$. |
| Path | Path for the Agent files. The default path includes CMAgent. |
| Install From | VCM Collector from which to install the Agent. |
| DCOM | Communication protocol for the Agent. The default setting is DCOM. |

| Option | Description |
|-------------------------------------|--|
| HTTP | Secure communication protocol for the Agent. Use HTTP, which installs the HTTP Listener on the target machine and configures it to listen on the designated port. |
| Port | Designated port for the HTTP Listener. |
| Install using a proxy server | For Windows Proxies and Windows Agents only. If the target machine is separated from the Collector by a proxy server, this option instructs the installation process to check for available proxy servers. |
| Lock the machine after installation | Ensures that VCM will not uninstall the Agent or replace it with a different version. |
| Reinstall Agent | Overwrites an installed Agent. |

- On the Schedule page, select **Run Action now** and click **Next**.
You can schedule subsequent Agent installations to run later.
- On the Important page, review the summary information and click **Finish**.

What to do next

- Verify that jobs have finished running. Click **Administration** and select **Job Manager > History > Other Jobs > Past 24 Hours**.
- Enable UAC on the Windows 7, 2008, 2008 R2, or Vista machines in your environment. See "[Enable UAC After VCM Agent Installation](#)" on page 83.
- Collect Windows data from VCM managed machines in your environment. See "[Collect Windows Data](#)" on page 84.

Locate the Enterprise Certificate

Locate the Enterprise Certificate before you install the VCM Agent on the managed Windows machine. VCM must access the Enterprise Certificate during the Agent installation.

If your Collector is operating in a full Public Key Infrastructure (PKI), and the target machine can validate the Collector root certificate (Enterprise Certificate), the .pem file is not required.

Procedure

- Locate the Enterprise Certificate .pem file in the Collector's c:\Program Files (x86)\VMware\VCM\CollectorData folder.
- If the certificate files are not in the default location, you must confirm the path to the files.
 - Click **Administration**.
 - Select **Settings > General Settings > Collector**.
 - Select **Root directory for all collector files**.
 - Confirm the file path in the **Value** column.

Manually Install the VCM Windows Agent

You can manually install the Windows Agent on the VCM managed machine by using the executable (EXE) file or the Microsoft Installer (MSI) file that is supplied with VCM.

- You use the EXE file to install the Agent in unattended, silent mode. EXE files detect an existing software version and provide the option to uninstall the existing version.
- You use the MSI file to install the Agent in unattended, silent mode. MSI files are database files. The Windows `msiexec.exe` executable file reads the data in the MSI file, and then installs the Agent.

The MSI file uninstalls any existing, non-MSI Agent without sending a request. If you run the MSI installer again, the removal option is available.


If you use a new MSI file to upgrade an MSI-installed Agent, the old Agent is uninstalled.

The VCM Enterprise Certificate is installed when you initially installed VCM. During the Agent installation process, if you select HTTP, VCM installs the Enterprise Certificate in the certificate store on the VCM managed machine.

The Collector root certificate authenticates Collector requests on the managed machine before it processes a collection or change request. The authentication process uses the Collector Certificate and established trust to the Enterprise Certificate.

Use the EXE File to Install the Agent

You can use the EXE file to manually install the VCM Windows Agent on a target machine. The directories in this procedure are default locations.

 **CAUTION For Vista, Windows 7, and Windows 2008 only:** If you set the compatibility mode on an Agent executable file to a previous version of Windows, VCM might report the compatible operating system instead of the actual operating system. For example, on a Windows 7 machine, if you set the Agent to run in compatibility mode for Windows XP, the Agent will report that the machine is a Windows XP machine.

Prerequisites

Locate the Enterprise Certificate before you install the VCM Agent. See "[Locate the Enterprise Certificate](#)" on page 78.

Procedure

1. On your VCM Collector, open Windows Explorer and navigate to the Agent files directory at `C:\Program Files (x86)\VMware\VCM\AgentFiles`.
2. Copy the `CMAgentInstall.exe` file from the Collector to the target machine or a shared network location.
The `CMAgentInstall.exe` file is located in the path relative to the installed software on the Collector.
3. On the target machine, use Windows Explorer and run the installation in either normal or silent mode.
 - For normal mode, run `CMAgentInstall.exe`.
 - For silent mode, run `CMAgentInstall.exe /s INSTALLPATH=%Systemroot%\CMAgent PORT=26542 CERT=C:\<folder_without_spaces>\vcm_cert.pem`.

The `%Systemroot%` environment variable specifies the directory where Windows is installed, which is typically `\WINNT` or `\WINDOWS`.

Use the following options for the installation.

| Option | Action |
|---------------------------------|--|
| <code>CMAgentInstall.exe</code> | Executable file used to install the Agent. |

| Option | Action |
|-------------|---|
| /s | <p>Indicates a silent install. When you run <code>CMAgentInstall.exe</code> from the command line, VMware recommends that you install the Agent in silent mode.</p> <p>To use the silent mode, you must unlock the Agent before you can proceed with the installation. To unlock the Agent, use the <code>-UNLOCK</code> option.</p> <p>The syntax is <code>CMAgentInstall.exe /s</code> <code>INSTALLPATH=%Systemroot%\CMAgent</code> <code>PORT=26542</code> <code>CERT=C:\<folder_without_spaces>\vcm_cert.pem.</code></p> <p>To relock your managed machine, you must submit a lock request from the VCM Collector. To submit the lock request, click Administration and select Settings > General Settings > Installer. Edit the Lock Agent after it is installed? setting to lock the managed machine.</p> |
| INSTALLPATH | Location to install the Agent files. |
| PORT | <p>Port number used for HTTP Agents.</p> <p>The default value is 26542.</p> <p>If you do not include the <code>PORT</code> parameter, VCM uses DCOM and does not install the communication socket listener service. The certificate is not required.</p> |
| CERT | <p>Indicates the certificate that you generated or specified on the Collector during the Collector installation. The location of the certificate file is in the fully qualified path, local to the relative to the installed software on the Collector. By default the path is <code>C:\Program Files</code> <code>(x86)\VMware\VCM\CollectorData\[certificate name].pem.</code></p> <p>If you include <code>PORT</code>, but do not use a certificate, you must use the <code>CERT=SKIP</code> parameter to allow an HTTP Agent to operate without a valid <code>CERT</code> path.</p> <p>The <code>CERT</code> path cannot contain spaces, even when enclosed in quotes, so enter an 8.3 compatible path as in the preceding silent mode example.</p> |

4. On the target machine, in Windows Explorer run `CMAgentInstall.exe`.

What to do next

- To confirm that the job finished running, click **Administration** and select **Job Manager > History > Other Jobs > Past 24 Hours**.
- Collect Windows data from VCM managed machines. See ["Collect Windows Data" on page 84](#).
- Enable UAC on the Windows 7, 2008, 2008 R2, or Vista machines in your environment. See ["Enable UAC After VCM Agent Installation" on page 83](#).

Use the MSI File to Install the Agent

You can use the MSI file to manually install the VCM Windows Agent on a target machine. The directories specified in this procedure are default locations.

Prerequisites

Locate the Enterprise Certificate before you install the VCM Agent. See ["Locate the Enterprise Certificate" on page 78](#).

Procedure

1. On your VCM Collector, open Windows Explorer and navigate to the Agent files directory at `c:\Program Files (x86)\VMware\VCM\AgentFiles`.
2. Copy the `CMAgent[version].msi` file to the target machine or a shared network location.
The `CMAgent[version].msi` file is located in the path relative to the installed software on the Collector.
3. Locate the `CMAgent[Version].msi` file.
4. If the file does not exist, you must copy `CMAgent[Version].msi` to the target machine, or install it from a network share onto the target machine.
5. Copy the Enterprise Certificate `.pem` file to the target machine.
6. On the target machine, in Windows Explorer, run `CMAgent[Version].msi` using the following syntax:

```
msiexec /Option <Required Parameter> [Optional Parameter]
```

For example:

```
msiexec.exe /qn /i "[PathToFile]\CMAgent[Version].msi" [PORTNUMBER=<available port>] [INSTALLDIR="<new path>"]
```

Use the following options for the installation.

| Option | Action |
|-----------------------------------|--|
| <code>CMAgent[Version].msi</code> | <p>When used with default options, this command removes any existing Windows Agent, installs the new Agent in the <code>%SystemRoot%\CMAgent</code> directory, and uses DCOM for communication.</p> <p>When you include an option with <code>CMAgent[Version].msi</code>, you must follow these conventions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Include optional parameters in any combination and order. ■ After the required <code>/i</code> parameter, use uppercase letters for optional parameters. ■ Use quotation marks when a path includes spaces in the source file location and the <code>INSTALLDIR</code> parameter. <p>To see details about the options, select Start > Run > msiexec.</p> |
| <code>%Systemroot%</code> | Environment variable that specifies the directory where Windows is installed, which is typically <code>\WINNT</code> or <code>\WINDOWS</code> . |
| <code>/qb</code> | Runs the command in a basic user interface and displays the progress and error messages. |

| Option | Action |
|-----------------|---|
| /qn | Runs the command in quiet mode without user interaction. |
| /i | Runs the command as an installation. |
| /x | Runs the command as an uninstall process. |
| PORTNUMBER | <p>Installs the Windows Agent on the port number specified, and uses HTTP instead of DCOM. For HTTP installations where you include PORTNUMBER, you must include an Enterprise Certificate by using the following syntax:</p> <pre>CERTIFICATEFILE="<drive>:\[mypath]\[mycert].pem"</pre> <p>For example:</p> <pre>msiexec.exe /qn /i "C:\temp\CMAgent[VersionNumber].msi" PORTNUMBER=2666 CERTIFICATEFILE="x:\mypath\mycert.pem"</pre> <p>If you include PORTNUMBER, you must either include the path to the certificate file, or supplement the CERTIFICATEFILE parameter with the SKIP parameter .</p> |
| INSTALLDIR | <p>Location to install the Agent. Use to change the default root directory specification, which is %SystemRoot%\CMAgent.</p> <p>For example:</p> <pre>msiexec.exe /qn /i "C:\temp\CMAgent[VersionNumber].msi" INSTALLDIR="C:\VCM"</pre> |
| CERTIFICATEFILE | <p>Includes the Enterprise Certificate with either the path or the SKIP parameter.</p> <p>For example:</p> <pre>CERTIFICATEFILE="x:\[mypath]\[mycert].pem" or CERTIFICATEFILE="SKIP"</pre> |

What to do next

- To confirm that the job finished running, click **Administration** and select **Job Manager > History > Other Jobs > Past 24 Hours**.
- Collect Windows data from VCM managed machines. See ["Collect Windows Data" on page 84](#).
- Enable UAC on the Windows 7, 2008, 2008 R2, or Vista machines in your environment. See ["Enable UAC After VCM Agent Installation" on page 83](#).

Manually Uninstall the VCM Windows Agent

When you no longer manage a Windows machine with VCM, you uninstall the Agent from that target machine. If you used VCM to install the Agent, you must use VCM to uninstall the Agent.

To keep historical data, do not remove the Windows machine from VCM. After you remove the Windows Agent and remove the managed Windows machine from the list of licensed machines, VCM no longer manages the Windows machine and you can no longer collect data from it.

The Windows Agent uninstall executable file exists on the VCM managed machine if you installed the Agent manually using `CMAgentInstall.exe` or `CMAgentInstall.msi`. Use this manual process to uninstall the Agent only if you used either of these commands to install the Agent.

Procedure

1. On the VCM managed machine, run
`%SystemRoot%\CMAgent\Uninstall\Packages\CMAgentInstall\UnCMAgentInstall.exe`.

This path displays the default location. The EXE file is located in the path relative to the installed software on the Collector.

Enable UAC After VCM Agent Installation

Enable User Account Control (UAC) on Windows 7, 2008, 2008 R2, and Vista machines after you install the VCM Agent.

You can enable UAC on a single Windows machine or a group of Windows machines.

- ["Enable User Account Control on a Single Windows Machine" on page 83](#)
- ["Enable UAC By Using a Group Policy" on page 83](#)

Enable User Account Control on a Single Windows Machine

You must enable User Account Control (UAC) on Windows 7, 2008, 2008 R2, or Vista machines after you install the VCM Agent on the target machines.

This procedure is documented on a Windows 2008 machine.

Procedure

1. On the target Windows 2008 machine, click **Start > Run**.
2. In the Run dialog box, type **msconfig** and click **OK**.
3. In the User Account Control dialog box, click **Continue**.
4. In the System Configuration dialog box, click the **Tools** tab.
5. In the Tool Name list, select **Enable UAC**.
6. Click **Launch**.
7. When the command is finished running, click **Close** and click **Close** again.
8. Restart the Windows 2008 machine to apply the changes.

What to do next

Collect data from managed Windows machines. See ["Collect Windows Data" on page 84](#).

Enable UAC By Using a Group Policy

If you disabled the User Account Control (UAC) using a group policy, you can re-enable UAC VCM by using a group policy.

This procedure is documented on a Windows 2008 machine.

Procedure

1. On the Windows 2008 machine, click **Start > Run**.
2. In the **Run** dialog box, type **msconfig** and click **OK**.
3. In the User Account Control dialog box, click **Continue**.
4. In the **System Configuration** dialog box, click the **Tools** tab.
5. In the **Tool Name** list, select **Enable UAC**.
6. Click **Launch**.
7. When the command is finished running, click **Close** and click **Close** again.
8. Restart the Windows 2008 machine to apply the changes.

What to do next

Collect data from managed Windows machines. See ["Collect Windows Data" on page 84](#).

Collect Windows Data

Start managing the Windows machines by performing an initial collection, which adds Windows machine data to VCM.

Use the default filter set to collect a general view of the Windows machines in your environment. The first time that you use the default filter to collect data, the Windows Agent returns all of the data specified in the filter and stores the data in the VCM database. All subsequent collections will return a delta against the data previously collected.

A delta collection includes only the differences between the data on the target machine and the data stored in the VCM database. If you need a full collection, you can specify that VCM collect all data again. A full collection can take a significant amount of time depending on the number of VCM managed Windows machines from which you are collecting.

When you perform a full collection from your entire environment, run the collection during nonworking hours so that users do not notice any performance impact on managed machines. After the initial collection is finished, subsequent delta collections will most likely not impact performance.

Prerequisites

- Collect the Accounts and Groups data types from the primary domain controller (PDC) in each domain to increase the performance of initial collections that require a SID lookup.
- To collect data from Windows XP SP2 or Vista machines that use DCOM communication, you must enable ICMP pings in the firewall settings or disable ICMP pings in VCM.
- Verify that DCOM is enabled on the managed machine. Run `dcomcnfg` and select **Enable Distributed COM on this computer**.

Procedure

1. On the VCM toolbar, click **Collect**.
2. On the Collection Type page, select **Machine Data** and click **OK**.
3. On the Machines page, select the Windows machines from which to collect data and click **Next**.

- To move all visible Windows machines to the selection window, 500 at a time, use the double arrow.
4. On the Data Types page, select the **Select All** checkbox.
 5. Select **Use default filters** and click **Next**.
 6. On the Important page, resolve any conflicts and click **Finish**.

What to do next

- Verify that jobs have finished running. Click **Administration** and select **Job Manager > History > Other Jobs > Past 24 Hours**.
- Review the collection results. See "[Windows Collection Results](#)" on page 85.

Windows Collection Results

Continuous Windows machine management is based on the latest data that you collect from target machines. You can view data and run actions, such as reports or compliance, based on the collected data.

Windows data appears in VCM and is available for several management actions, including Console dashboards and reports, Compliance views, and VCM Patching. The displayed data is only as current as the last time you collected the data.

After the initial discovery is finished, perform a weekly discovery to update the list of available Windows machines. To schedule a VCM discovery job, click **Administration**, select **Job Manager > Scheduled**, and follow the wizard.

| Option | Description |
|------------|--|
| Console | <p>Displays dashboards and reports based on collected data. Use the Console to view data that is relevant to day-to-day operations, troubleshooting, and analysis.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ To view the dashboards, click Console and select Dashboards > Windows > Operating Systems. ■ To view the summary reports, click Console and select Windows > Operating System > Machines. You can view the data in a summary report or data grid format. |
| Compliance | <p>Determines if the data collected from VCM managed Windows machines meets specified compliance values, and allows you to run compliance remediation actions.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ To run a compliance check, click Compliance and select Machine Group Compliance. ■ To create rule groups, rules, filters, and templates, see the online help. |
| Reports | <p>Runs preconfigured reports or you can create custom reports. VCM runs reports against the latest collected data. Depending on the data volume or complexity of the requested report, it might take time to generate the report. You can also schedule and disseminate reports.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ To use the reporting options, click Reports and select Machine Group Reports > Windows. |
| Patching | <p>Assesses target machines to determine if the patching status of the Windows machines is up-to-date. You can install the latest patches on target machines.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ To assess and patch Windows machines, click Patching and select Windows. |

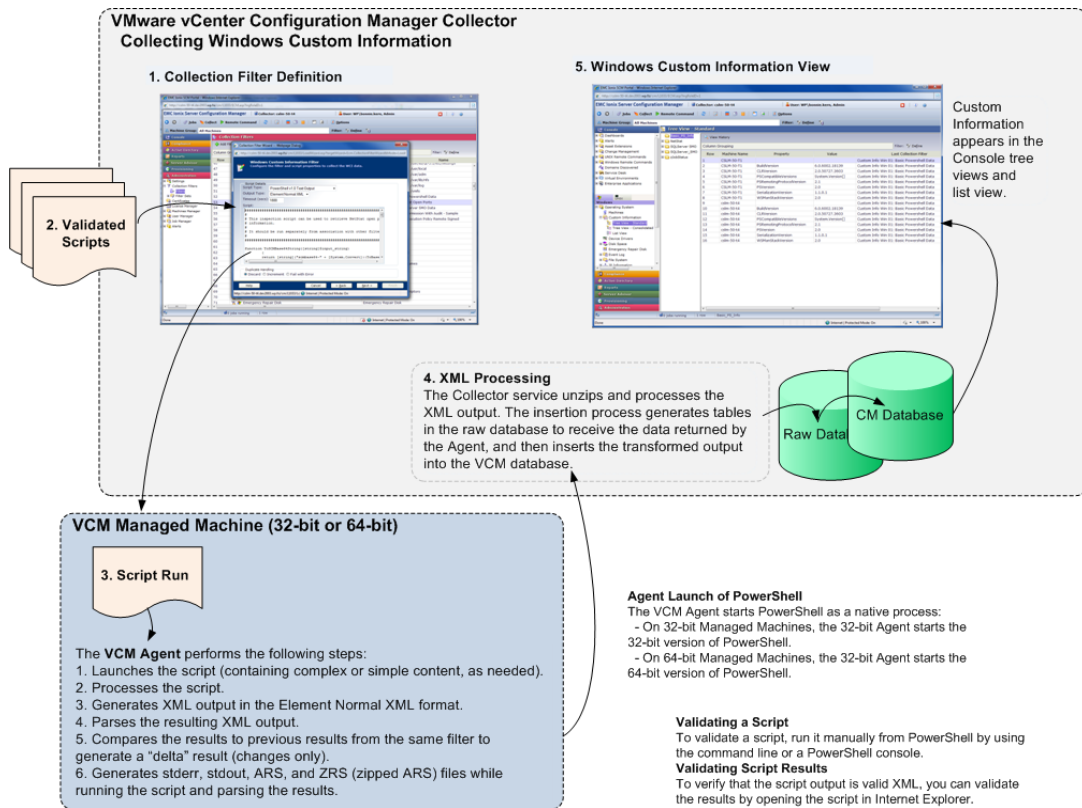
| Option | Description |
|--------|--|
| | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> To run assessments and patch your Windows machines, see the online help. |

Getting Started with Windows Custom Information

Windows Custom Information (WCI) is data collected from VCM managed machines that is created by PowerShell scripts. WCI supplements and extends the data collected by VCM from managed Windows machines using other VCM data types.

You can create or modify WCI scripts to collect almost any data type that is accessible from VCM managed machines. VCM supports PowerShell scripting and XML output to collect Windows Custom Information.

Figure 7–1. Windows Custom Information Collection Process



To extend the data collected by VCM from managed Windows machines using other VCM data types, collect Windows Custom Information. Configure the prerequisites and create and validate your PowerShell script.

Prerequisites

- To collect Windows Custom Information from VCM managed machines, you must configure the prerequisites. See ["Prerequisites to Collect Windows Custom Information" on page 87](#).

Procedure

1. ["Collecting Windows Custom Information" on page 98](#)

To collect Windows Custom Information (WCI) using script-based filters, you create and verify your custom PowerShell scripts, install PowerShell on the VCM managed machines, and use VCM to collect the WCI data.

Prerequisites to Collect Windows Custom Information

To collect Windows Custom Information from VCM managed machines, you must configure the prerequisites.

Prerequisites

- Write your own PowerShell script to return data in a VCM compatible, element-normal XML format, or obtain PowerShell scripts from VMware Professional Services or another source. See ["Using PowerShell Scripts for WCI Collections" on page 87](#).
- Understand the script signing policies if you use PowerShell 2.0. See ["PowerShell Script Signing Policies" on page 91](#).
- Set the PowerShell execution policy on the VCM managed machine. See ["Built-In PowerShell Policy Settings" on page 92](#).
- Understand how to write and run PowerShell scripts. See ["References on PowerShell and Script Signing" on page 92](#).
- Verify that your PowerShell script is accessible when you paste the script content into the Script area of the collection filter on the VCM Collector.
- Confirm that the VCM Collector includes PowerShell 2.0 if the Collector is a client for WCI collections.
- Understand how VCM manages Windows Custom Information data changes. See ["Windows Custom Information Change Management" on page 97](#).
- Confirm that PowerShell 2.0 is installed on each VCM managed machine that will be used for WCI collections. See ["Install PowerShell" on page 100](#).
- Upgrade older VCM Agents on the VCM managed machines from which you collect Windows Custom Information, and then install the VCM 5.3 Agent or later on these machines.
- Confirm or update the Agent Thread Administration settings on the VCM Collector. The default value is set to below normal thread priority, and the Agent Data Retention default is set to a 15-day change log.

Using PowerShell Scripts for WCI Collections

Windows Custom Information (WCI) uses PowerShell as the scripting engine and the element-normal XML format as the output that is inserted into the VCM database.

WCI supports PowerShell 2.0 and works with later versions of PowerShell.

- PowerShell 2.0 is the base requirement for WCI in VCM because of its ability to set the execution policy at the process level.
- You can run WCI PowerShell collection scripts against Windows machines that have PowerShell 1.0 installed if needed, although this usage is not supported or tested. If the collection scripts do not use PowerShell 2.0 commands, your WCI filters that use the in-line method to pass a WCI script to PowerShell will operate correctly.

The WCI data type uses extensions to the VCM Windows Agent. The extensions allow the Agent to invoke PowerShell scripts. Using the script-based collection filter, VCM passes the PowerShell scripts to a VCM managed machine, and the VCM Agent parses the resulting XML output. The default WCI filter returns the PowerShell version information from the managed machines.

WCI data type extensions are flexible because they use filter parameters that the command line uses to invoke the scripting engine. The WCI extensions use a COM class name to specify the parser required for the Agent to parse the script output, and allow new types of parsers to be added at the Agent. This approach extends the support of multiple scripting engines, languages, and output formats.

Guidelines in PowerShell Scripting for WCI

When you develop custom PowerShell scripts to collect the Windows Custom Information (WCI) data type from VCM managed Windows machines, follow these guidelines.

- Make XML element names unique at the same level.
For example, you can specify two child nodes that are not siblings.
- Make attributes unique at the same level.
- Use unique XML element names to generate valid VCM XML. The XML elements are code blocks that include the element's start and end tags. The element can contain other elements, text, attributes, or a combination of them.
- Use repeatable identifiers to prevent false indications of changes at the Collector. If your element labels (identifiers) are not the same for every collection of the same item, you will see false additions, changes, and deletions in the VCM change log.
- Confirm that the script returns valid XML element names and attribute names.

If the data to be returned is an element name or an attribute name that is not valid for XML, you can encode the name using the `[ToCMBase64String]` function. A VCM Collector job, called the inserter, is executed during each collection. The inserter recognizes the names that are encoded with this function and decodes them in the raw insertion process.

The inserter parses the resulting XML file and inserts the data into a new raw database table named `VCM_Raw` by default. The XML process transforms the raw data into data that appears in VCM.

The function is defined as follows.

```
function ToCMBase64String([string]$input_string)
{
    return [string] ("cmbase64-" +
        [System.Convert]::ToBase64String([System.Text.Encoding]::UNICODE.GetBytes
        ($input_string))).replace("=", "-")
}
```

- Include a comment block and configurable parameter entries near the start of the script so that when you clone a WCI collection filter you can see the parameters and set them when you edit the collection filter. To view and edit the collection filters, click **Administration** and select **Collection Filters > Filters**.
- Redirect any variable declarations in the script to out-null, along with any other tasks that generate output that is not part of the XML result set. For example, you can use the following command.

```
[reflection.assembly]::LoadWithPartialName("Microsoft.SqlServer.Smo") > out-null
```
- Do not include any formatting, white space, carriage returns, or line feeds at the end of elements, nodes, or attributes.

Challenges in PowerShell Scripting for WCI

When you develop custom collection scripts, understand the challenges that you might encounter while scripting in PowerShell to collect the Windows Custom Information (WCI) data type from VCM managed Windows machines.

PowerShell scripts can use the `split` method of PowerShell strings, which separates the columns of the rows into separate values in arrays. For example, Windows provides the `schtasks.exe` utility to manage scheduled tasks on a local or remote computer and report on the scheduled tasks.

The `split` method of PowerShell strings in the `$schtasks` script separates the columns of the `$schtasks` rows into separate values in arrays.

- Column names row provides the names to use for attributes.
- Corresponding data from the scheduled task rows provides the values to use for these attributes.

The top-level name of `<schtasks>` is an arbitrary name that you apply to distinguish the results of this script from other results. The XML script returns the parsed data, which resembles the following structure.

```
<schtasks>
  <taskname1>
    <attribute1>Value1</attribute1>
    <attribute2>Value2</attribute2>
  </taskname1>
  <taskname2>
    <attribute1>Value1</attribute1>
    <attribute2>Value2</attribute2>
  </taskname2>
</schtasks>
```

The returned data can include the following problems with content.

- White space, such as tabs or spaces, is not allowed in returned data.
- Column names include spaces.
- Specific task entries do not include a unique and repeatable identifier.
- Values can contain XML syntax in functions, which you must enclose in CDATA.

Column Names Include Spaces

Running the `schtasks` command without any options displays a column name of `Next Run Time`. Because this name includes spaces, you cannot use it as an attribute name in an XML document. Running the `schtasks` command verbosely generates other column names that include spaces. Although you cannot use these invalid names as attribute names, you can preserve the names by using VCM encoding standards.

To preserve these column names in the form that `schtasks` returns and allow for XML handling, VCM encodes the column names with the `ToCMBase64String` function. To create a valid XML form of an element name or attribute name, this function uses Unicode Base64 encoding and character substitution, such as using a dash instead of an equal sign, as shown in the following example.

```
function ToCMBase64String([string]$input_string)
{
    return [string]("cmbase64-" +
[System.Convert]::ToBase64String([System.Text.Encoding]::
    UNICODE.GetBytes($input_string)).replace("=", "-"))
}
```

Using this function corrects the invalid column name data.

VCM prefaces the string with `cmbase64-` so that the VCM inserter can decode the data and load the decoded data into the VCM database.

The valid XML appears as follows.

```
<cmbase64-TgBlAHgAdAAgAFIAdQBwACAABpAG0AZQA->
12:32:00, 5/26/2010
</cmbase64-TgBlAHgAdAAgAFIAdQBwACAABpAG0AZQA->
```

Invalid XML omits the encoding function as follows.

```
<Next Run Time>
12:32:00, 5/26/2010
</Next Run Time>
```

Task Entries Do Not Include a Unique and Repeatable Identifier

Use repeatable identifiers to prevent false indications of changes at the Collector. If your element labels (identifiers) are not the same for every collection of the same item, you will see false additions, changes, and deletions in the VCM change log.

The Windows `schtasks` command does not include a unique and repeatable identifier for specific task entries. Because unique element names are a requirement for valid VCM XML and repeatable identifiers help prevent false indications of changes at the VCM Collector, you must code the task names correctly in your script.

To create unique and repeatable element names, create a task entry name based on a hash of the data in the row. You can use this method for data that does not have a name-type attribute, where the task name exists but is not guaranteed to be unique. When the task name is user-friendly and useful, you must attempt to preserve the name and use it in the collection script.

To preserve the user-friendly name, use the task name as the element name for the task rows. When you create a collection filter that uses your script, you must select the incremental duplicate handling option so that the collection process includes an incremental entry in the list of entries where the same task name appears multiple times.

For example, in a sample test environment, many Windows machines had more than one task named `GoogleUpdateTaskMachineCore`. A PowerShell script can label the rows as `Task1`, `Task2`, and so on. If you delete `Task1`, `Task2` becomes `Task1`, and VCM displays multiple change details for `Task1`, such as the command line and the next run time. This report would be incorrect because even though `Task 1` would have changed place in the sequence, the task would not have changed.

The task names are labeled accordingly.

- The first task entry is labeled `GoogleUpdateTaskMachineCore`.
- The second task entry is labeled `GoogleUpdateTaskMachineCore_1`.

Because task names can contain characters that are not valid in XML element names, VCM encodes the task names with the `ToCMBase64String` function. If you reorder the list of tasks whose names are identical, VCM can still report extra changes. For this reason, require the VCM user interface to display the friendly task names.

Enclose Values that Can Contain XML Syntax in CDATA

When you develop your custom PowerShell scripts to collect the Windows Custom Information data type from VCM managed Windows machines, you must use CDATA to enclose values that contain XML syntax.

For example:

```
function wrapInCDATA( [string]$input_string)
{
    [string]$wrappedInCDATA | out-null
    if ( $input_string.Length -gt 0 )
    {
        $wrappedInCDATA = ("<!" + "[CDATA" + "[" + $input_string + "]" + "]" + ">")
    }
    return $wrappedInCDATA
}
```

PowerShell Script Signing Policies

With PowerShell 2.0 you can set the script signing policies at the machine, user, and process levels. The process level runs a single execution of `powershell.exe`.

In VCM, Windows Custom Information (WCI) uses script type information in the collection filter to determine how to execute PowerShell and how to pass the script to it.

Use the following methods to pass a WCI script to PowerShell.

- **In-line:** The default WCI filter uses an in-line script to collect basic information about the PowerShell version, .NET version, and execution policy settings. The in-line option requires a collection script that is represented as a single line of PowerShell code. Because the filter runs an in-line script on the PowerShell command line, instead of using a file, the execution policy does not apply.
- **Script file:** For script-based filters in WCI, the default script type command line includes options to set the process-level execution policy to Remote Signed. The script requires that the execution policy be set to Remote Signed at the most restrictive level because the script runs from a file that resides locally on the VCM managed Windows machine. For WCI, VCM can execute collection scripts on managed machines where the machine and user level signing policies are set to any level, without requiring you to change the setting.

Built-In PowerShell Policy Settings

Before you use the WCI collection filter to run file-based PowerShell scripts on the VCM Collector and your VCM managed machines, you must change the execution policy on the VCM managed machines.

PowerShell contains built-in execution policies that limit its use as an attack vector. By default, the execution policy is set to Restricted, which is the primary policy for script execution.

The following policy settings apply to PowerShell scripts.

- **AllSigned:** PowerShell scripts must be signed by a verifiable certificate from the Software Publishing Certificate store. The typical file extension is .ps1. For signed scripts, you can set the execution policy to **All Signed**. You must sign the scripts and distribute the appropriate certificates before you collect WCI data.
- **RemoteSigned:** A verifiable certificate must sign any PowerShell script that you download from the Internet using a supported browser such as Internet Explorer. Script files that are not required to be signed are scripts that you create locally or scripts that you download using a method that does not support flagging the file source. For unsigned scripts, you must set the execution policy to the most restrictive level of **Remote Signed**. You can set the policy directly by using a Group Policy Object (GPO) with a VCM remote command. You can use a registry change action or enforceable compliance. For example:


```
HKLM\Software\Microsoft\PowerShell\1\ShellIds\Microsoft.PowerShell
"ExecutionPolicy"="RemoteSigned"
```
- **Unrestricted:** All PowerShell script files run regardless of whether they are signed by a verifiable certificate.
- **Restricted:** You can use PowerShell interactively or to run commands directly from the command line. This setting is the default.

References on PowerShell and Script Signing

For information about Windows PowerShell and script signing policies, see the Microsoft Web site.

Create an Example PowerShell Script for Scheduled Tasks

Use a custom PowerShell script to collect Windows Custom Information (WCI) data from VCM managed Windows machines. With this example, you can learn how to use PowerShell scripts to collect WCI data for scheduled tasks.

Windows provides the `schtasks.exe` utility to report on scheduled tasks that you create in the Task Scheduler user interface or by using the `AT` command. The `schtasks.exe` utility enables you to manage scheduled tasks on a local or remote computer and to report on the scheduled tasks.

The `schtasks` command returns basic information about scheduled tasks. The data returned by `schtasks` includes multiple rows. PowerShell structures the `$schtasks` variable in an array. For example, `$schtasks[0]` represents the first row. To view the result set, use `$schtasks[n]`, which displays the following status:

- `$schtasks[0]` is blank.
- `$schtasks[1]` contains column names.
- `$schtasks[2]` is the first row of task data.

Prerequisites

- Review the guidelines to create PowerShell scripts for WCI collections, and understand the challenges in PowerShell scripting. See ["Guidelines in PowerShell Scripting for WCI" on page 88.](#)
- Understand how to write and run PowerShell scripts. See ["References on PowerShell and Script Signing" on page 92.](#)

Procedure

1. On your VCM managed Windows machine, click **Start**.
2. Select **All Programs > Accessories > Windows PowerShell**.
 - On a 64-bit Windows machine, select **Windows PowerShell (x86)** to run the 32-bit version of PowerShell.
 - On a 32-bit Windows machine, select **Windows PowerShell**.
3. Run the command to set the source of data for the collection script.

```
$schtasks = schtasks /query /v /fo:csv
```

| Option | Description |
|---|---|
| <code>/query /v</code> | Displays additional information about scheduled tasks. Verbose formatting is difficult for automated processing. |
| <code>schtasks /query /v /fo:csv</code> | Displays verbose task output and sets the source of data for the collection script to a comma-separated value (csv) result set. |
| <code>schtasks /query /?</code> | Displays additional command options. |

4. To return the data to the VCM Collector, parse the data into a structure that is compatible with the VCM XML format.

The sample script parses the data as shown in the following code.

```
#####-
##
#
# This inspection script can be used to retrieve scheduled tasks
information
# for tasks created through the Scheduler UI or through the AT command.
#
```

```
#####-
##
function ToCMBase64String([string]$input_string)
{
return [string]("cmbase64-" +
[System.Convert]::ToBase64String([System.Text.Encoding]::UNICODE.GetBytes
($input_string))).replace("=", "-")
}
#####-
##
[string]$cihash | out-null
#create a hashtable to check for duplicate rows
$hasharray = @{}
$clTasks = ("<Scheduled_Tasks>")
$split = [char]3
$schtasks = schtasks /query /v /fo:csv
if ($schtasks.count -gt 1)
{
#depending on OS, the first row may be blank
#use $k to determine whether to start at the first or second row
if ($schtasks[0] -eq "")
{
$k = 1
}
else
{
$k = 0
}
$cols = $schtasks[$k].substring(1,$schtasks[$k].length-
2).replace("","",$split).split($split)
#find the HostName and TaskName columns
$hostcol = -1
$namecol = -1
$j = 0
while (($j -lt $cols.count) -and (($hostcol -eq -1) -or ($namecol -eq
-1)))
{
```

```

if ([[string]$cols[$j]).toupper() -eq "HOSTNAME")
    {
        $hostcol = $j++
    }
else
    {
        if ([[string]$cols[$j]).toupper() -eq "TASKNAME")
            {
                $namecol = $j++
            }
        else
            {
                $j++
            }
    }
}

#save first column name, to check for repeated column rows
$firstcol = $cols[0]

#encode each column name
for ($j=0;$j -lt $cols.count;$j++)
    {
        $cols[$j] = [string](ToCMBase64String($cols[$j]))
    }

#loop through each row
#start at $k+1, because the first row may blank, and the first
populated row is column names
for ($i=$k+1;$i -lt $schtasks.count;$i++)
    {
        #make sure this is a data row
        $row = ([string]($schtasks[$i])).trim()
        if ($row.contains("\"", "\""))
            {
                #split the row
                $task = $schtasks[$i].substring(1,$schtasks[$i].length-
2).replace("\"", "\"", $split).split($split)

```

```

#some operating systems will return columns multiple times
in the result set
if ($task[0] -ne $firstcol)
{
    #if we did not find a TaskName column, just tag each
    row as Task-n
    if ($namecol -gt -1)
        {
            $clTasks += "<" +
            [string](ToCMBase64String($task[$namecol])) + ">"
        }
    else
        {
            $clTasks += ("<Task-" + ([string]($i-1)) + ">")
        }
    for ($j=0;$j -lt $task.count;$j++)
        {
            #skip the hostname field, since we are doing a
            local inspection
            if (-not($j -eq $hostcol))
                {
                    $clTasks += ("<" + $cols[$j] + ">")
                    $clTasks += $task[$j]
                    $clTasks += ("</" + $cols[$j] + ">")
                }
        }
    #if we did not find a TaskName column, just tag each
    row as Task-n
    if ($namecol -gt -1)
        {
            $clTasks += "</" +
            [string](ToCMBase64String($task[$namecol])) + ">"
        }
    else
        {
            $clTasks += ("</Task-" + ([string]($i-1)) + ">")
        }
}

```



```

        } #end data row that is not columns repeated
    } #end data row
} #end row loop
}

```

```

$xmlTasks += ("</Scheduled_Tasks>")
write-host $xmlTasks

```

5. After you generate your PowerShell script, perform the following steps:

- Build a collection filter in VCM.
- Paste the content of your script into the collection filter.
- Collect data using the script-based collection filter.

To view the collected WCI data in VCM, click **Console** and select **Windows Operating System > Custom Information > List View**.

What to do next

Develop your own custom PowerShell script. See ["Create Your Own WCI PowerShell Collection Script" on page 99](#).

Windows Custom Information Change Management

VCM manages Windows Custom Information (WCI) data changes on a per-filter basis on VCM managed Windows machines. When multiple filters return data using the same top-level XML element name, each filter applies unique change detection.

When you use multiple collection filters to collect WCI data, follow these guidelines.

- Create filters that collect data in a parallel manner. See the following examples.
 - Use one filter to collect data from C:\ and another filter to collect data from C:\Windows.
 - Use a separate filter to collect data from C:\Windows with audit information and another filter to collect data from C:\Windows without audit information.

When you use filters in an unparallel way, every time the file system updates to add a new file or remove an existing file, both filters generate "new file" and "deleted file" events, which causes overlap of the data.

- Use one filter to collect data from NetStat.
- Use multiple filters to collect data from the NTFS file system.

For example, use one filter to collect data in C:\, and another filter to collect data in C:\Windows\System. These collections merge under the top-level element `NTFSDirectory` without overlap, because each filter collects separate parts of the file structure and avoids extra change reporting.

- Do not create filters that overlap collected WCI data. Overlap can occur if you use filters that do not collect data in a parallel manner.
- Do not use multiple filters to collect the same data for NetStat Open Ports.

When the filters return data under the top-level element name and a managed machine starts to listen on port 80, each filter initially reports the data as a newly created value, which causes overlap of the data reported.

- Do not create two filters to collect data on the File Permission With Audit data type from different parts of a managed machine's file system.

Collecting Windows Custom Information

To collect Windows Custom Information (WCI) using script-based filters, you create and verify your custom PowerShell scripts, install PowerShell on the VCM managed machines, and use VCM to collect the WCI data.

Procedure

1. ["Create Your Own WCI PowerShell Collection Script" on page 99](#)

Create or modify your Windows Custom Information (WCI) scripts to collect almost any data type that is accessible from VCM managed Windows machines. To return data in a VCM compatible, element-normal XML format, you create your own PowerShell script or obtain PowerShell scripts from VMware Professional Services or another source and modify them for your own collections.

2. ["Verify that Your Custom PowerShell Script is Valid" on page 99](#)

Verify that your PowerShell script adheres to valid XML before you use the script to collect Windows Custom Information (WCI) from VCM managed machines.

3. ["Install PowerShell" on page 100](#)

Verify that PowerShell 2.0 is installed on each VCM managed Windows machine used to collect Windows Custom Information (WCI).

4. ["Collect Windows Custom Information Data" on page 100](#)

Use the Windows Custom Information (WCI) data type to perform user-defined, script-based collections on your VCM managed machines. To collect the custom data, you build a collection filter that includes a script with parameters to run the script and process the results.

5. ["View Windows Custom Information Job Status Details" on page 102](#)

When you run Windows Custom Information (WCI) collection filter scripts, VCM captures detailed information and displays status about exit codes and standard error output for each job that processed the script or filter. You can view the job status details in Job Manager.

6. ["Windows Custom Information Collection Results" on page 103](#)

Examine the results of your Windows Custom Information (WCI) collected data in the VCM tree views and list view.

7. ["Run Windows Custom Information Reports" on page 104](#)

Generate your own reports or run existing reports on Windows Custom Information (WCI) data that you collected using your custom PowerShell scripts.

8. ["Troubleshooting Custom PowerShell Scripts" on page 104](#)

If you encounter problems when you run custom PowerShell scripts, run the script as a .ps1 file and correct any errors before you use the script with a VCM collection filter.

Create Your Own WCI PowerShell Collection Script

Create or modify your Windows Custom Information (WCI) scripts to collect almost any data type that is accessible from VCM managed Windows machines. To return data in a VCM compatible, element-normal XML format, you create your own PowerShell script or obtain PowerShell scripts from VMware Professional Services or another source and modify them for your own collections.

WCI internally stores data in a hierarchy, so your collection script must provide the complete data structure in the standard tree view. The root element in the XML result data set becomes a top-level root element in the WCI data type node. Child elements appear in the same locations in VCM as the locations they populate in the XML document returned by the script.

Prerequisites

- Understand how to write and run PowerShell scripts. See ["References on PowerShell and Script Signing" on page 92](#).
- Plan your data structure to display WCI data in a tree hierarchy based on the data structure specified in the user-defined collection scripts. For an example, see Windows Custom Information Tree View - Standard in the online help.
- Review the guidelines to create PowerShell scripts for WCI collections and understand the challenges. See ["Guidelines in PowerShell Scripting for WCI" on page 88](#).
- Review the example PowerShell script to see a sample script used for a WCI collection. See ["Create an Example PowerShell Script for Scheduled Tasks" on page 92](#).

Procedure

1. On your VCM Collector or managed Windows machine, click **Start**.
2. Select **All Programs > Accessories > Windows PowerShell**.
 - On a 64-bit Windows machine, select **Windows PowerShell (x86)** to run the 32-bit version of PowerShell.
 - On a 32-bit Windows machine, select **Windows PowerShell**.
3. Create your PowerShell script and save it to the location of your choice.

What to do next

Verify that your PowerShell script adheres to valid XML before you can use the script to collect WCI data from VCM managed machines. See ["Verify that Your Custom PowerShell Script is Valid" on page 99](#).

Verify that Your Custom PowerShell Script is Valid

Verify that your PowerShell script adheres to valid XML before you use the script to collect Windows Custom Information (WCI) from VCM managed machines.

To verify that your script is valid, run the script in PowerShell.

Procedure

1. On your VCM Collector or managed Windows machine, open a command prompt.
2. Run `powershell.exe` from the command line.
3. Paste your script into the PowerShell window.
 - If your script does not run, press Enter.
4. Make sure that your script runs without errors.

Errors appear in red in the PowerShell window.

5. If errors occur, resolve them.

A valid script returns a set of XML content without any formatting, white space, carriage returns, or line feeds at the end of elements, nodes, or attributes.

What to do next

Install PowerShell on your VCM managed machines. See ["Install PowerShell" on page 100](#).

Install PowerShell

Verify that PowerShell 2.0 is installed on each VCM managed Windows machine used to collect Windows Custom Information (WCI).

PowerShell 2.0 is supported on all platforms that support PowerShell 1.0.

- PowerShell is installed by default on Windows 2008 R2 and Windows 7 machines.
- For Windows XP, 2003, 2003 R2, 2008, and Vista machines, you must install PowerShell separately.
- You cannot install PowerShell on Windows 2000 or NT4 machines.

Because of its ability to set the execution policy at the process level, PowerShell 2.0 is the base requirement for WCI in VCM. If you run the standard WCI non-inline collection filters against PowerShell 1.0 VCM managed machines, the collection process will fail.

Procedure

1. On your VCM managed machine, check the following registry entry to verify whether PowerShell 2.0 is installed.
 - a. Key Location: `HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SOFTWARE\Microsoft\PowerShell\1\PowerShellEngine`
 - b. Value Name: `PowerShellVersion`
 - c. Value Type: `REG_SZ`
 - d. Value Data: `<1.0 | 2.0>`

If you do not check the registry, the steps to determine if PowerShell 2.0 might differ depending on the platform type of your managed machine.

If PowerShell is not installed on the target VCM managed machine, the WCI collection returns a `Not Executed` status. See ["View Windows Custom Information Job Status Details" on page 102](#).

What to do next

Reboot the VCM managed machine after you install or upgrade PowerShell to ensure that collections work properly.

Collect Windows Custom Information Data

Use the Windows Custom Information (WCI) data type to perform user-defined, script-based collections on your VCM managed machines. To collect the custom data, you build a collection filter that includes a script with parameters to run the script and process the results.

When you use the script-based filter in a collection, the VCM Agent calls a script engine to run the script, parse the results to return the collected data to the VCM database, and display the results in the VCM Console. During the collection process, the VCM Agent starts PowerShell, which runs the script and generates the XML result file. The Agent parses the XML result into a format that VCM can use to check for changes and returns the changes to the Collector.



CAUTION Do not limit collections to deltas when you select a data type in the Collect wizard. If you limit collections to deltas, VCM purges all existing WCI data from the managed machine's master file and from the VCM database, and replaces the WCI data with newly collected data. You must select the option in the Collect wizard so that VCM does not purge WCI data during collections.

Prerequisites

See ["Prerequisites to Collect Windows Custom Information" on page 87](#).

Procedure

1. On your VCM Collector, click **Administration**.
2. Select **Collection Filters > Filters** and click **Add Filter**.
3. On the Name and Description page, type a name and description for the filter and click **Next**.
4. On the Data Type page, select **Windows**.
5. Select the **Custom Information (Win)** data type and click **Next**.
6. On the Windows Custom Information Filter page, select the options to add and configure the filter and click **Next**.

| Option | Description |
|--------------------|--|
| Script Type | Set the format of your PowerShell script to PowerShell v2.0 Text Output . |
| Output Type | Set the resulting output for your PowerShell script to Element Normal XML . |
| Timeout | Retain the default setting of 300 seconds to specify the amount of time the Agent allows a PowerShell script to run before it attempts to end the process. If the script takes more than 300 seconds to run on the VCM managed machine, increase the setting to 900. |
| Script | Paste the content of your PowerShell script into the Script text pane. Your script contains statements that are specific to the data type to collect. |
| Duplicate Handling | Set the method to handle duplicates to Increment to resolve duplicate violations of duplicate path attributes in the PowerShell script. |

7. On the Important page, review the summary information and click **Finish**.

What to do next

Run a script-based collection filter to collect WCI data using from VCM managed Windows machines. See ["Run the Script-Based Collection Filter" on page 101](#).

Run the Script-Based Collection Filter

Use a collection filter and your PowerShell script to collect Windows Custom Information (WCI) from VCM managed Windows machines.

Procedure

1. On your VCM Collector, click **Collect**.
2. On the Collection Type page, select **Machine Data** and click **OK**.
3. On the Machines page, select the managed machines from which to collect WCI data and click **Next**.
4. Click **Select Data types to collect from these machines** and click **Next**.
VCM runs a default collection filter for the data type you select.
5. Select **Do not limit collection to deltas** and click **Next**.
VCM does not purge WCI data during the collection.
6. On the Data Types page, expand **Windows** and select **Custom Information (Windows)**.
7. Click **Select data filters** and click **Next**.
8. On the Filters page, select your WCI filter.
9. Click the arrow to move your filter to the selection area and click **Next**.
10. (Optional) On the Important page, select **View Selected Filter Details** to see details about your collection filter.
11. Click **Close** and click **Finish**.

What to do next

- To confirm that the job finished running, click **Administration** and select **Job Manager > History > Other Jobs > Past 24 Hours**.
- View the detailed status about exit codes and standard error output for each job that processed the script or filter. See ["View Windows Custom Information Job Status Details" on page 102](#).

View Windows Custom Information Job Status Details

When you run Windows Custom Information (WCI) collection filter scripts, VCM captures detailed information and displays status about exit codes and standard error output for each job that processed the script or filter. You can view the job status details in Job Manager.

The following procedure displays data for an instant collection performed in the last 24 hours.

Prerequisites

- Verify that all prerequisite components exist on the VCM managed machine. If a prerequisite component such as PowerShell is not installed or available on the managed machine, the script cannot run and a status of `Not Executed` appears in the Status column. Because optional components such as PowerShell or other script engines might not be supported for installation on all VCM-supported OS versions, a `Not Executed` status does not result in a failure.
- Collect Windows Custom Information. See ["Collect Windows Custom Information Data" on page 100](#).

Procedure

1. On your VCM Collector, click **Administration**.
2. Select **Job Manager > History > Instant Collections > Past 24 Hours**.
3. In the Instant Collections pane, select a collection job that includes WCI data.
4. In the Job History Machine Detail pane, select **View Details**.

A single row appears for each WCI filter that ran in the collection job. Information about the WCI script and the script results parsing appears in the row.

5. In the View Details by Machine window, select the managed machines to view and click **OK**.

Detailed job history results appear for the WCI filters and managed machines.

- If a WCI collection job encounters errors on a VCM managed machine, VCM reports detailed information about the failure. Failures can occur when PowerShell starts, during script execution, or when interpreting the script results.
- If PowerShell is not installed on the managed machine, an error can occur in the PowerShell startup process. Because PowerShell is an optional component, a status of `Not Executed` can appear in the job details to indicate the skipped steps. The `Not Executed` status does not appear as an error in the VCM job.
- If a PowerShell script generates errors due to defects in the script, such as syntactical or typographical errors, VCM reports the status as finished with errors in the collection job.

What to do next

- Review the WCI collection results. See ["Windows Custom Information Collection Results" on page 103](#).
- Generate your own reports. See ["Run Windows Custom Information Reports" on page 104](#).

Windows Custom Information Collection Results

Examine the results of your Windows Custom Information (WCI) collected data in the VCM tree views and list view.

Prerequisites

Collect WCI data and confirm that the WCI collection job finished. Click **Administration** and select **Job Manager > History > Other Jobs > Past 24 Hours**. See ["Collect Windows Custom Information Data" on page 100](#).

Procedure

1. On your VCM Collector, click **Console**.
2. Select **Windows > Operating System > Custom Information**.
3. Select a view of the collected WCI data.

| Option | Description |
|--------------------------|--|
| Tree View - Standard | Tree hierarchy view based on the data structure in your PowerShell script. |
| Tree View - Consolidated | Tree hierarchy that displays data across multiple elements simultaneously with the data consolidated from one level of the tree. The child node properties and values appear in each node. |
| List View | Data organized by a list of top-level elements. You can filter, sort, or group the data. |

What to do next

Generate your own reports. See ["Run Windows Custom Information Reports" on page 104](#).

Run Windows Custom Information Reports

Generate your own reports or run existing reports on Windows Custom Information (WCI) data that you collected using your custom PowerShell scripts.

Prerequisites

Collect WCI data. See ["Collect Windows Custom Information Data" on page 100](#).

Procedure

1. On your VCM Collector, click **Reports**.
2. Select **Machine Group Reports > Windows > Custom Information**.
3. Select a custom information report.

| Option | Description |
|--------------------------------|---|
| Netstat Open Ports Information | Reports port and protocol information from the <code>netstat -A</code> command. |
| SQL SMO Database Information | Reports the database details collected. |
| SQL SMO Instance Information | Reports basic information about the SQL Server instances collected. |

4. Click **Run**.

The report displays information about the collected WCI data. For example, the NetStat Open Ports Information report displays the protocol, port, remote port, local address, foreign address, port state, and the collection filter used in the collection.

Troubleshooting Custom PowerShell Scripts

If you encounter problems when you run custom PowerShell scripts, run the script as a `.ps1` file and correct any errors before you use the script with a VCM collection filter.

Prerequisites

- Verify that your script runs in PowerShell. See "[Verify that Your Custom PowerShell Script is Valid](#)" on [page 99](#).
- Understand the PowerShell script signing policies. See "[PowerShell Script Signing Policies](#)" on [page 91](#).

Procedure

1. On your VCM Collector, save the script to a file that has the .ps1 extension.
2. Run the script file from a command line using PowerShell 2.0 or PowerShell 1.0.
 - For PowerShell 2.0, run:

```
PowerShell -command set-executionpolicy RemoteSigned -scope Process ;  
scriptname.ps1 > resultfile.xml
```
 - For PowerShell 1.0, set the execution policy to Remote Signed or use a less restrictive policy, and run:

```
PowerShell -file scriptname.ps1 > resultfile.xml
```

When the script is finished running, it generates the XML file.

3. Verify that you can open the XML file in Internet Explorer.
 - If you cannot see the entire file, allow blocked content.
 - If Internet Explorer cannot parse the XML file, you must correct any formatting errors.

If you have Visual Studio installed, you can use it locate formatting errors in large XML files.

What to do next

- Re-run your custom PowerShell script to verify that it runs correctly. See "[Collect Windows Custom Information Data](#)" on [page 100](#).
- View the detailed status about exit codes and standard error output for each job that processed the script or filter. See "[View Windows Custom Information Job Status Details](#)" on [page 102](#).
- After the Windows Custom Information data is available in the VCM database, you can generate reports and enforce compliance. See the online help.

Configuring Linux and UNIX Machines

To collect UNIX/Linux data and to manage your physical or virtual UNIX/Linux machines, you must add the machines, license them for use, and install the appropriate VCM Agent.

Prerequisites

Review the upgrade requirements to determine if the machines on which you are installing the current Agent are supported platforms and machine type. See ["Upgrade Requirements for UNIX/Linux Machines" on page 107](#).

Procedure

1. ["Add UNIX/Linux Machines" on page 108](#)

Add UNIX/Linux machines to the Available Machines list to make the machines available for licensing.

2. ["License UNIX/Linux Machines" on page 109](#)

License UNIX/Linux machines before you install the Agent and begin to manage them. You license the machines displayed in the Available Machines list.

3. ["Install the Agent on UNIX/Linux Machines" on page 109](#)

Install the appropriate version of the VCM Agent on each of your licensed target machines to enable communication between the Collector and the managed UNIX/Linux machines.

4. ["Collect UNIX/Linux Data" on page 116](#)

When the UNIX/Linux machines are licensed and the Agent is installed, you collect data from those machines.

Continuous machine management is based on the latest data you collect from target machines. You can view data and run actions, such as reports or compliance, based on the collected data. See ["UNIX/Linux Collection Results" on page 116](#).

Upgrade Requirements for UNIX/Linux Machines

To use new VCM functionality, you must upgrade the VCM Agent on target machines based on machine type. You must consider several requirements if you are upgrading from a previous Agent version to the current version on your managed UNIX and Linux machines.

When you upgrade the UNIX Agent on Red Hat machines, be aware of the licensing changes between VCM versions. In VCM 5.5, physical and virtual machines are licensed as servers or workstations.

For general UNIX and Linux machine requirements, see the *VCM Installation Guide*.

Add UNIX/Linux Machines

Add UNIX/Linux machines to the Available Machines list to make the machines available for licensing.

If you add a large number of machines, you can use other methods to add the machines. See the online help for procedures to import machine information from a file or use IP Discovery.

NOTE You can use the Discovered Machines Import Tool (DMIT), which imports machines discovered by the Network Mapper (Nmap), to import many physical and virtual machines at one time into the VCM database. Download DMIT from the VMware Web site.

Prerequisites

Verify that you know the name or IP address, domain, domain type, machine type, and the communication port for the machines to add.

Procedure

1. Click **Administration**.
2. Select **Machines Manager > Available Machines**.
3. Click **Add Machines**.
4. On the Add Machines page, select **Basic** and click **Next**.
5. On the Manually Add Machines - Basic page, add the machine information.
 - a. Configure machine information.

| Option | Action |
|--------------|---|
| Machine | Type the name of the machine. You can use NetBIOS or Fully-Qualified Domain Name (FQDN) notation for the name. If your Collector cannot resolve a host name with a DNS Server, use an IP address rather than a machine name. |
| Domain | Type or select the domain to which the machine belongs. |
| Type | Select the domain type. |
| Machine Type | Select the machine type. |
| Port | Type the port number. The default value is 26542 when you select a UNIX/Linux or Mac OS X machine type. The port number must be the same number used when you install the Agent on the managed UNIX/Linux machine. |

- b. Click **Add**.
 - c. To add other machines, configure the machine information and click **Add**.
 - d. After you add the target machines, click **Next**.
6. On the Important page, review the machine information and click **Finish**.
The machine is added to the Available Machines data grid.

What to do next

License the machine. See ["License UNIX/Linux Machines" on page 109](#).

License UNIX/Linux Machines

License UNIX/Linux machines before you install the Agent and begin to manage them. You license the machines displayed in the Available Machines list.

Prerequisites

- Verify that you added the UNIX/Linux machines. See ["Add UNIX/Linux Machines" on page 108](#).
- Determine if your managed Red Hat workstations and servers are affected by an upgrade from a previous version of VCM. See ["Upgrade Requirements for UNIX/Linux Machines" on page 107](#).
- Verify that the machines you are licensing have a specified Machine Type. Machines without a Machine Type value will not be licensed.

Procedure

1. Click **Administration**.
2. Select **Machines Manager > Available Machines**.
3. Select the machines and click **License**.
4. On the Machines page, verify that the Selected list includes the machines to license and click **Next**.
5. On the Product License Details page, review the licensed machine count and click **Next**.
6. On the Important page, click **Finish**.

What to do next

Install the Agent on the target machines. See ["Install the Agent on UNIX/Linux Machines" on page 109](#).

Install the Agent on UNIX/Linux Machines

Install the appropriate version of the VCM Agent on each of your licensed target machines to enable communication between the Collector and the managed UNIX/Linux machines.

Installing the Agent on UNIX/Linux machines is a manual operation. You can run the installation process in silent mode or interactive mode. To run the installation in silent mode, you must edit the configuration options in the `csi.config` file. The file is edited to accommodate different target machine types.

A Deployment Utility is available in `C:\Program Files (x86)\VMware\VCM\Tools` to assist you with your UNIX/Linux configuration for selected steps. See the utility's online help for more information.

IMPORTANT Ensure that you install the Agent on newly managed machines rather than upgrading currently managed machines. If you are upgrading, see ["Upgrade Requirements for UNIX/Linux Machines" on page 107](#).

Prerequisites

- Verify that the machine on which you intend to install the Agent has enough free disk space. For more information, see the *VCM Installation Guide*.
- If you run an installation in silent mode, modify the appropriate `csi.config` file variable options. See ["Installation Options for UNIX/Linux `csi.config`" on page 113](#).
- If you select `(x) inetd/launchd` for `CSI_AGENT_RUN_OPTION`, verify that `(x) inetd/launchd` is running on the target machines. On some versions, when `(x) inetd/launchd` services are not configured, `(x) inetd/launchd` will not stay running. To ensure the Agent installation finishes successfully, pass a `- stayalive` option to `(x) inetd/launchd`. See ["Installation Options for UNIX/Linux `csi.config`" on page 113](#).
- Log in to the target UNIX/Linux machine as `root`.
- Disable or reconfigure firewalls on SUSE and Red Hat machines to install the Agent.
- Select the method that you want to use to copy files to the target machines. You can use `ftp`, `sftp`, or `cp` using an NFS share. If you use `ftp` to copy the package to your machine, you must use binary mode.

Procedure

1. Copy the appropriate Agent binary installation package from the Collector to the machine on which you will install the Agent.

The Agent packages are located on the Collector in `\Program Files (x86)\VMware\VCM\Installer\Packages`.

| Operating System Version | Agent Binary |
|--|---|
| Red Hat (Enterprise) Linux Edition (Version 3.0, 4.0, 5.0, 5.1, 5.2, 5.3, 5.4, 5.5, 5.6, 5.7, 6, 6.1, 6.2). Red Hat 3.0 requires the <code>CMAgent.5.4.0.Linux Agent</code> . SUSE Linux Enterprise Server (9, 10.0–10.4, 11.0–11.1), Debian (4). SUSE 9 requires the <code>CMAgent.5.4.0.Linux Agent</code> . | <code>CMAgent.<version>.Linux</code> |
| Solaris (Versions 9 and 10 supported on Sparc) | <code>CMAgent.<version>.SunOS</code> |
| Solaris (Version 10 for x86) | <code>CMAgent.<version>.SunOS.x86.5.10</code> |
| HP-UX 11i Versions 1.0, 2.0, 3.0 (11.11, 11.23, and 11.31; Supported on PA-RISC) | <code>CMAgent.<version>.HP-UX.11.pa</code> |
| HP-UX 11i Version 2.0, 3.0 (11.23 and 11.31-Supported on Itanium) | <code>CMAgent.<version>.HPUX.11.ia64</code> |
| AIX Version 5L (5.3, 6L (6.1), 7.1) | <code>CMAgent.<version>.AIX.5</code> |

2. On the target machine, run `chmod u+x <filename>` to set the execute permission for the file owner on the Agent binary file.
3. In the directory to which you copied the file, run `./CMAgent.<version>.<Agent binary name>` to create the necessary directory structure and extract the files.

To force an overwrite of any existing files, include the `-o` option. For example:

```
/CMAgent.<version>.SunOS -o.
```

The command and output is similar to the following example, but with different file names depending on the operating system.

```
# ./CMAgent.<version>.SunOS
UnZipSFX 5.51 of 22 May 2004, by Info-ZIP (http://www.info-zip.org).
creating: CSIIInstall/
creating: CSIIInstall/packages/
inflating: CSIIInstall/packages/Agent.1.0.SunOS
inflating: CSIIInstall/packages/CFC.1.0.SunOS
inflating: CSIIInstall/packages/ECMu.1.0.SunOS
inflating: CSIIInstall/packages/ThirdParty.1.0.SunOS
inflating: CSIIInstall/packages/cis.1.0.SunOS
extracting: CSIIInstall/packages/package.sizes.SunOS
inflating: CSIIInstall/packages/python.23.SunOS
creating: CSIIInstall/scripts/
inflating: CSIIInstall/scripts/checksum
inflating: CSIIInstall/scripts/BootStrapInstall.sh
inflating: CSIIInstall/scripts/AltSource_filesystem.sh
inflating: CSIIInstall/scripts/AltSource_ftp.sh
inflating: CSIIInstall/scripts/AltSource_rcp.sh
inflating: CSIIInstall/scripts/AltSource_sftp.sh
inflating: CSIIInstall/scripts/AltSource_wget.sh
extracting: CSIIInstall/scripts/AltSourceCmd
inflating: CSIIInstall/InstallCMAgent
inflating: CSIIInstall/csi.config
inflating: CSIIInstall/CMAgent.<version>.OS
creating: CSIIInstall/.security/certificates/
inflating:CSIIInstall/.security/certificates/<EnterpriseCertificate>
```

4. Run `cd <extractedpath>/CSIIInstall` to change the directory to the location where the `InstallCMAgent` executable file was extracted.
5. Run `ls -la` to validate that the correct files are in the `<extractedpath>/CSIIInstall` directory.

| File | Description |
|-----------------------------|---|
| <code>InstallCMAgent</code> | Installation script. |
| <code>csi.config</code> | Configuration file for the installation. This is the file you can modify to include installation options for silent rather than interactive installation processes. |
| <code>packages</code> | Installation packages. |
| <code>scripts</code> | Scripts required for the installation. |

6. (Optional) Edit the `csi.config` file to customize the installation variables and save your changes.

- a. Run the `chmod u+x csi.config` command to add write file permissions if the file has only read permissions set.
- b. Modify the `csi.config` file options based on your local requirements and save the file.
- c. Copy the modified and saved `csi.config` file to the extracted location.

For example, # `cp /<safelocation>/csi.config
/<extractedlocation>/CSIInstall/csi.config.`

7. Run `InstallCMAgent` in either silent mode or interactive mode.

| Option | Action |
|------------------|--|
| Silent mode | <p>Run the # <code>./CSIInstall/InstallCMAgent -s</code> command.</p> <p>Install the Agent using the silent mode if you manually edited the <code>csi.config</code> file, if you modified the <code>csi.config</code> file using the interactive method, or if you are using a custom configuration file that you saved from a previous Agent installation. This mode uses the values specified in <code>csi.config</code> without prompting for input.</p> <p>When the silent installation finishes, a summary of the installation process and status appears. Verify that the installation finished without errors.</p> |
| Interactive mode | <p>Run the # <code>./CSIInstall/InstallCMAgent</code> command.</p> <p>Install the Agent using the interactive mode if you did not modify the <code>csi.config</code> and to respond to each prompt to accept or change each parameter in the <code>csi.config</code> file as it runs. As a result of your responses, the <code>csi.config</code> is modified.</p> <p>The preinstallation stage of interactive mode checks for a valid user, <code>CSI_USER</code>. If the user exists, you are not prompted for these configuration values.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ <code>CSI_USER_NO_LOGIN_SHELL</code> ■ <code>CSI_USER_PRIMARY_GROUP</code> ■ <code>CSI_USER_PRIMARY_GID</code> ■ <code>CSI_USER_USE_NEXT_AVAILABLE_LOCAL_GID</code> <p>You are prompted for these values only when the <code>CSI_USER</code> user account is not found.</p> |

You can check the installation status in the installation log file. The file is located in `<CSI_PARENT_DIRECTORY>/log/install.log`.

8. Run `ls -la /CSI_PARENT_DIRECTORY/CMAgent` to verify that all the required files and directories were installed.

`/CSI_PARENT_DIRECTORY/CMAgent` is the default directory. If you changed the directory name during installation, modify the `ls -la` command to display the custom directory name.


```

drwxr-x--- 3 root cfgsoft 4096 Jul 2 17:34 Agent
drwxr-x--- 3 root cfgsoft 4096 Jul 2 17:34 CFC
-rw-rw---- 1 root cfgsoft 49993 Jul 2 17:34 CSIRegistry
-rw-rw---- 1 root cfgsoft 0 Jul 2 17:34 .CSIRegistry.lck
drwxrwx--- 3 csi_acct cfgsoft 4096 Jul 2 17:34 data
drwxrwx--- 3 root cfgsoft 4096 Jul 2 17:34 ECMu
drwxr-x--- 6 root cfgsoft 4096 Jul 2 17:34 install
lrwxrwxrwx 1 root root 20 Jul 2 17:34 log -> /var/log/CMAgent/log
dr-xr-x--x 3 root cfgsoft 4096 Jul 2 17:34 ThirdParty
drwxr-xr-x 2 root root 4096 Jul 2 17:34 uninstall

```

- Run `# netstat -na | grep <port_number>` to verify that the Agent is installed correctly, listening on the assigned port, and ready to collect data.

The default `<port_number>` is 26542 for VCM installations.

- If you are installing on SUSE, start `xinetd` using the `# ./etc/init.d/xinetd start` command after the installation completes.

What to do next

Run a collection for UNIX/Linux data. See ["Collect UNIX/Linux Data" on page 116](#)

Installation Options for UNIX/Linux `csi.config`

The installation options are variables you add or modify in the `csi.config` file used when you install the Agent. You can create several versions of this file based on operating system or specific settings, but do not change the file name.

| Installation Options with Default Values | Description |
|---|--|
| <code>CSI_AGENT_RUN_OPTION</code> | <p>You can install the Agent as a daemon process or installed to be run by <code>inetd/xinetd/launchd</code>.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> A value of <code>inetd</code> installs the Agent for execution by <code>inetd/xinetd/launchd</code>. A value of <code>daemon</code> installs the agent for execution as a daemon process. |
| <code>CSI_NO_LOGIN_SHELL=</code> <code>+S:+A</code> <code>:/sbin/noshell+/bin/false+</code> <code>/sbin/false+/usr/bin/false</code> <code>+/sbin/nologin</code> | <p>The <code>CSI_USER</code> account must not have a login shell. This parameter lists all valid no-login shells and is used to verify the <code>CSI_USER</code> has no-login shell.</p> <p>If your system has a valid no login shell that is not listed, you append a plus sign and add the no login shell to the list.</p> <p>The options available for this parameter include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <code>+S</code> means only for Solaris <code>+A</code> means only for AIX <code>+H</code> means only for HP-UX <code>+L</code> means only for Linux <code>+</code> means for all operating systems |
| <code>CSI_CREATE_USER=Y</code> | Keep the default value. Indicates whether the user will be created. |

| Installation Options with Default Values | Description |
|--|--|
| | When you install in trusted mode on HP-UX v1.0 (11.11), the user must exist on the target machine. If you attempt to install and create the user, the installation of the Agent fails. |
| CSI_USER_ID=501 | Keep the default value. Integer value for the user ID of the created user. |
| CSI_USER_NO_LOGIN_SHELL=/bin/false | Keep the default value. Indicates the no-login shell value to use when you create the user. |
| CSI_USER_PRIMARY_GROUP=csi_acct | Keep the default value. Group name to use when you create a new user as the user's primary group. This group is for low security access. Most inspections are executed with the lowest possible privileges using this group while also preventing access by way of this group to the high security group privileges. |
| CSI_CREATE_USER_PRIMARY_GROUP=Y | Keep the default value. Indicates the need to create a low-security primary group for the CSI_USER. |
| CSI_USER_PRIMARY_GID=501 | Keep the default value. Create user's primary Group ID. |
| CSI_USER_USE_NEXT_AVAILABLE_LOCAL_GID=Y | Keep the default value. Setting this option to Y allows the Group ID to be the next available local Group ID over CSI_USER_PRIMARY_GID. |
| CSI_USER=csi_acct | Keep the default value. The user assigned to the <code>cfgsoft</code> group. The CSI listener process runs under this user. |
| CSI_CFGSOFT_GID=500 | Keep the default value. The Group ID of the <code>cfgsoft</code> group. This value can change if the GID is already in use. This group is for high-security access. Some inspections require root privileges, which are provided indirectly through this group and <code>setuid</code> to root. |
| CSI_CREATE_LOCAL_GROUP=Y | Keep the default value. Setting this option to Y allows the <code>cfgsoftgroup</code> to be created. This setting allows the system call to <code>groupadd</code> . |
| CSI_USE_NEXT_AVAILABLE_LOCAL_GID=Y | Keep the default value. Setting this option to Y allows this Group ID to be the next available local Group ID starting at CSI_CFGSOFT_GID. |
| CSI_AGENT_PORT=26542 | Keep the default value. Specifies the port on which the Agent listens. |
| CSI_CREATE_LOCAL_SERVICE=Y | Keep the default value. Setting <code>CSI_CREATE_LOCAL_SERVICE</code> to Y allows the system to create the local service (copy files to system directories). |
| CSI_REFRESH_INETD=Y | Setting this option to Y allows the system to refresh <code>xinetd</code> (Linux) or <code>inetd</code> (Solaris, AIX, and HP-UX). Keep default value only if you are running your agent as <code>inetd</code> . If you are running your agent as a daemon, select <code>CSI_REFRESH_INETD=N</code> |
| CSI_NICE=10 | Keep the default value. Sets the nice value for the agent listener process. |

| Installation Options with Default Values | Description |
|---|--|
| <code>CSI_CERTIFICATE_PATH=</code> | Specifies the path to Collector Certificates. The certificates specified at this path are copied to the Agent. If your Collector Certificates are stored in an accessible location on this machine, you use this option to put the certificates in the Agent location. You should install the Enterprise Certificates so that multiple collector instances collecting from the same set of Agents is supported. If this package was copied from a collector installation, this package already contains that Collector's Enterprise Certificate. |
| <code>CSI_PARENT_DIRECTORY=/opt</code> | Specifies the parent directory of the CM Agent. The root directory of CMAgent will be <code>CSI_PARENT_DIRECTORY/CMAgent</code> . |
| <code>CSI_PARENT_DATA_DIRECTORY=/opt</code> | Specifies the parent directory of the CMAgent data directory. The data directory will be <code>CSI_PARENT_DATA_DIRECTORY/CMAgent/data</code> . |
| <code>CSI_PARENT_LOG_DIRECTORY=default</code> | Specifies where agent operational log files are kept. The log directory is <code>CSI_PARENT_LOG_DIRECTORY/CMAgent/log</code> . The default value indicates to use these values. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Linux: <code>/var/log</code> ■ AIX, HP-UX, and Solaris: <code>/var/adm</code> |
| <code>CSI_KEEP_CSIINSTALL=N</code> | Recommend keeping the default value. After a successful installation, the temp installation directory <code>CSIInstall</code> is deleted. To keep this installation directory, set this parameter to <code>Y</code> . |

Manually Uninstall the UNIX/Linux Agent

When you install the Agent, an uninstall file, `UninstallCMAgent`, is created in `<path>/CMAgent/uninstall`. You use the file to manually uninstall the Agent from the managed machine.

The uninstall reverses all changes made by installation. However, the installation log files are retained in `<AgentRoot>/install`. `<AgentRoot>` defaults to the CMAgent directory that was created during installation.

Prerequisite

To save a copy of the configuration file to use on other machines, copy `csi.config` to a secure location. The file is located in `<path>/CMAgent/install`.

Procedure

1. Navigate up one level from the `uninstall` directory in the CMAgent directory.
2. Run the `# ./uninstall/UninstallCMAgent` command to uninstall the Agent.

What to do next

After you run `UninstallCMAgent`, delete the remaining the CMAgent directory before you install a new Agent.

Collect UNIX/Linux Data

When the UNIX/Linux machines are licensed and the Agent is installed, you collect data from those machines.

Collecting data from machines adds the collected machine information to the VCM database and makes the machine data available for reporting, running compliance, and other management options. The collection process for UNIX/Linux collection is similar to other collections, including Windows, except that you select UNIX data types during the collection instead of Windows data types.

Prerequisites

- License the target machines. See ["License UNIX/Linux Machines" on page 109](#).
- Install the Agent on the target machines. See ["Install the Agent on UNIX/Linux Machines" on page 109](#).

Procedure

1. Click **Collect**.
2. On the Collection Type page, select **Machine Data** and click **OK**.
3. On the Machines page, select the machines from which you are collecting data and click **Next**.
4. On the Data Types page, configure the collection and click **Next**.
 - a. Select the **Select All** check box.
 - b. Select **Use default filters**.
5. On the Important page, verify that there are no conflicts with previously scheduled or running jobs, and click **Finish**.

The amount of time the first collection requires is determined by the number of machines and network connectivity.

6. Click Administration and select **Job Manager > History > Instant Collections > Past 24 Hours** to determine if the collection finished.

What to do next

- Review your collected data. See ["UNIX/Linux Collection Results" on page 116](#).

Updates to UNIX Patch Assessment Content Affects UNIX Agent Performance

By default, VCM Patching checks for patch updates every 4 hours. The time required to perform this action depends on the amount of new content downloaded to the Collector during the update process.

When the UNIX patch assessment content is pushed out to the UNIX Agents, the time required to run jobs such as collections and remote commands increases slightly. The time required varies based on how much new or updated content must be synchronized between the Collector and the Agent. This content push occurs when the first communication is initiated after installing the UNIX Agent package or when the Collector has platform-applicable patch content that was added after the last communication between the Agent and the Collector.

UNIX/Linux Collection Results

UNIX/Linux data is displayed in VCM and is available for several management actions.

The displayed data is only as current as the last time you collected the data.

| Option | Description |
|------------|---|
| Console | <p>Displays dashboards and summary reports based on collected data. You use the Console to view data relevant to day-to-day operations, troubleshooting, and analysis.</p> <p>To view the dashboards, click Console and select Dashboards > UNIX.</p> <p>To view the summary reports, click Console and select UNIX tab > Operating System > Machines > General. You can view the data in a summary report or data grid format.</p> |
| Reports | <p>Runs preconfigured VCM reports or create custom reports. Reports are run against currently collected data. Depending on the volume or complexity of the data requested in a report, it may take time to generate the report. Refer to the online help for information about scheduling and disseminating reports.</p> <p>To use the reporting options, click Reports and select Machine Group Reports > UNIX.</p> |
| Compliance | <p>Determines if the collected data from target machines meets specified compliance values, and allows you to run compliance remediation actions.</p> <p>To run a compliance check, click Compliance and select Machine Group Compliance and follow the steps described in the online help to create rule groups, rules, filters, and templates.</p> |
| Patching | <p>Assesses target machines to determine if the machines have the most current patches. If the patches are not yet installed, you can install the latest patches on the target machines.</p> <p>To assess and patch machines, select Patching, and select your target operating system.</p> |

Configuring Oracle Instances

To manage your Oracle instances, you must discover or add the instances, modify the configuration values, and collect management view data from the instances.

An Oracle instance consists of shared memory structures and background processes that run the Oracle database. When you use VCM to collect Oracle management view data from multiple instances, you can run compliance and reports to ensure that all your instances are configured as expected.

Prerequisites

Add, license, and install the Agent on the Oracle instance host Solaris machines. See ["Configuring Linux and UNIX Machines" on page 107](#).

Procedure

1. ["Discover Oracle Instances" on page 118](#)

To discover Oracle instances, you run a collection on supported UNIX/Linux machines where Oracle is installed. The Oracle instance discovery process is based on data that you collect from the `oratab` file on managed Solaris machines on which Oracle is installed.

2. ["Edit Oracle Instances" on page 118](#)

You edit Oracle instance configuration to modify the discovered or added values for Oracle Home, Oracle Software Owner, DBA Group, and Oracle Collection User.

3. ["Collect Oracle Data" on page 123](#)

To collect Oracle data, you must collect the Oracle data types from the machines hosting the Oracle instances.

Continuous Oracle instance management is based on the latest data you collect from target instances. You can view data and run actions, such as reports or compliance, based on the collected data. See ["Oracle Collection Results" on page 124](#).

Discover Oracle Instances

To discover Oracle instances, you run a collection on supported UNIX/Linux machines where Oracle is installed. The Oracle instance discovery process is based on data that you collect from the `oratab` file on managed Solaris machines on which Oracle is installed.

Prerequisites

Add, license, and install the Agent on the Oracle instance host Solaris machines. See ["Configuring Linux and UNIX Machines" on page 107](#).

Procedure

1. Click **Collect**.
2. On the Collection Type page, select **Machine Data** and click **OK**.
3. On the Machines page, select the machines hosting the Oracle instances, select **Do not limit collection to deltas**, and click **Next**.
4. On the Data Types page, configure the collected data types.
 - a. Expand the UNIX data type.
 - b. Select **Machines - General** and **Oracle - Management Views**.
 - c. Select **Use default filters** and click **Next**.
5. On the Important page, verify that there are no conflicts with scheduled or running jobs, and click **Finish**.

The amount of time the first collection requires is determined by the number of machines and network connectivity.

6. Click **Administration** and select **Job Manager > History > Instant Collections > Past 24 Hours** to determine if the collection finished successfully.

What to do next

- Click **Administration** and select **Machines Manager > Additional Components > VCM for Oracle** and verify that the discovered configuration information is correct and that it includes an Oracle Collection User. If the information about the instance does not include a valid Oracle Collection User value, see ["Edit Oracle Instances" on page 118](#). If the instance is not included in the data grid, see ["Add Oracle Instances" on page 120](#).
- If VCM discovered your Oracle instances and the Oracle Collection User account is correctly configured, collect data from the target instances. See ["Collect Oracle Data" on page 123](#).

Edit Oracle Instances

You edit Oracle instance configuration to modify the discovered or added values for Oracle Home, Oracle Software Owner, DBA Group, and Oracle Collection User.

To collect from Oracle instances, the target instances must have a configured Oracle Collection User created on the instance.

Prerequisites

- Add, license, and install the Agent on Solaris machines hosting Oracle instances. See "[Configuring Linux and UNIX Machines](#)" on page 107.
- Collect from the target Solaris machines using the Machines - General and Oracle - Management Views data types. The collection process discovers Oracle instances from the `oratab` file on Solaris machines. See "[Discover Oracle Instances](#)" on page 118.
- Verify that the collected configuration information is correct and that it includes an Oracle Collection User. Select **Administration > Machines Manager > Additional Components > VCM for Oracle** and review the data grid values. If the instance is not in the data grid, add the instance. See "[Add Oracle Instances](#)" on page 120. If the information about the instance does not include a valid Oracle Collection User value, edit the instance to update the configuration information.

Procedure

1. Click **Administration**.
2. Select **Machines Manager > Additional Components > VCM for Oracle**.
3. Select the target instances and click **Edit**.
4. On the Select Machines page, verify that the target Oracle instance machines are in the selected machines list and click **Next**.
5. On the Configuration Values page, configure the missing or incorrect values.
 - a. Type the configuration values.

| Option | Description |
|------------------------|--|
| Oracle Home | File path to the location of the Oracle software for the Oracle instance (user-defined). |
| Oracle SW Owner | User account that owns the Oracle software for the Oracle instance (user-defined). |
| DBA Group | Database administrator group account for the Oracle instance. |
| Oracle Collection User | User account that VCM uses to collect from the Oracle instance. |

- b. To create the OS-authenticated Oracle collection user on the target Oracle instances, select **Configure Oracle Collection User for the Added Instance**.

If you do not select this option, you must create the Oracle Collection User using either the Config User action or the Install Oracle Collection Account remote command. See the online help.
 - c. Click **Next**.
6. On the Important page, click **Finish**.
7. If you selected the **Configure Oracle Collection User for the Added Instance** option, on the Select Oracle instances page, add the target machines to the selected list and click **Next**.
8. On the Schedule page, select **Run Action now** and click **Next**.
9. On the Important page, click **Finish**.

What to do next

- If your target Oracle instance is Oracle 10g, you must set user permissions. See ["Grant Permissions for the Oracle Collection User Account on Oracle 10g" on page 122](#).
- To begin managing your Oracle instances, you must collect data from the target instances. See ["Collect Oracle Data" on page 123](#).

Add Oracle Instances

Adding Oracle instances identifies host Solaris machines and provides the Oracle SID, Oracle Home, Oracle Software Owner, DBA Group, and Oracle Collection User for the added instances.

You add Oracle instances if the collection of the Oracle instances from the host machines does not retrieve Oracle Home, Oracle SID and Oracle Software Owner from the `oratab` file on host machines.

Prerequisites

- Add, license, and install the Agent on Solaris machines hosting Oracle instances. See ["Configuring Linux and UNIX Machines" on page 107](#).
- Collect from the target Solaris machines using the following data types.

Machines - General

Oracle - Management Views

The collection process discovers Oracle instances from the `oratab` file on Solaris machines. See ["Discover Oracle Instances" on page 118](#).

Procedure

1. Click **Administration**.
2. Select **Machines Manager > Additional Components > VCM for Oracle**.
3. Click **Add**.
4. On the Select Machines page, add the target Oracle instance machines to the selected machines list and click **Next**.
5. On the Configuration Values page, add instances.

- a. Type the configuration values.

| Option | Description |
|------------------------|--|
| Oracle SID | (Add only) Name or system ID of the Oracle instance, used to identify a particular database on a machine. Each database on a machine must have a unique SID. |
| Oracle Home | File path to the location of the Oracle software for the Oracle instance (user-defined). |
| Oracle SW Owner | User account that owns the Oracle software for the Oracle instance (user-defined). |
| DBA Group | Database administrator group account for the Oracle instance. |
| Oracle Collection User | User account that VCM uses to collect from the Oracle instance. |

- b. Select **Configure Oracle Collection User for the Added Instance** to create the OS-authenticated Oracle collection user on the target Oracle instances.
- If you do not select this option, you must create the Oracle Collection User using either the Config User action or the Install Oracle Collection Account remote command. See the online help.
- c. Click **Add**.
- d. Continue adding configurations to apply to the selected machines or click **Next**.
6. On the Important page, click **Finish**.
7. If you selected the Configure Oracle Collection User for the Added Instance option, on the Select Oracle instances page, add the target machines to the selected list and click **Next**.
8. On the Schedule page, select **Run Action now** and click **Next**.
9. On the Important page, click **Finish**.

What to do next

- If your target Oracle instance is Oracle 10g, set user permissions. See ["Grant Permissions for the Oracle Collection User Account on Oracle 10g" on page 122](#).
- To begin managing your Oracle instances, collect data from the target instances. See ["Collect Oracle Data" on page 123](#).

Create the Oracle Collection User Account with the Config User Action

You can create an OS-authenticated Oracle collection user account on target Oracle instances from VCM. This action allows you manage the collection user account from VCM rather than managing the account in each Oracle instance. VCM must have the appropriate Oracle database access to collect data from Oracle instances. VCM uses the Oracle Collection User account to connect to the Oracle database and collect Oracle data.

Prerequisites

Verify that the Oracle instance is added to VCM. See ["Add Oracle Instances" on page 120](#).

Procedure

1. Click **Administration**.
2. Select **Machines Manager > Additional Components > VCM for Oracle**.
3. Click **Config User**.
4. On the Select Machines page, add the target Oracle instances to the selected instances list and click **Next**.
5. On the Schedule page, select **Run Action now** and click **Next**.
6. On the Important page, click **Finish**

What to do next

If your target Oracle instance is Oracle 10g, you must set user permissions. See ["Grant Permissions for the Oracle Collection User Account on Oracle 10g" on page 122](#).

Grant Permissions for the Oracle Collection User Account on Oracle 10g

For Oracle 10g installations, you must give the Oracle Collection User accounts read/execute permission to the required directories and files in Oracle Home.

By default, Oracle 10g has the permissions set to prevent users who are not part of the Oracle DBA Group from accessing and running files in the Oracle Home directory. Oracle Collection User accounts do not typically belong to the Oracle DBA Group and must be granted permissions on the required files.

Prerequisites

Verify that you added VCM-created Oracle Collection User accounts to Oracle instances. See ["Create the Oracle Collection User Account with the Config User Action" on page 121](#).

Procedure

1. On the Oracle instance, run `chmod o+rx <top level oracle install>` to grant permission for the Oracle Collection User on the required Oracle directories.

For example, `/opt/oracle`, `/oracle`, and so on.

2. Run `chmod o+rx <top level oracle install>` for every directory level from the top level install down to `$ORACLE_HOME`.

For example, if the top level is `/oracle` and `$ORACLE_HOME` is `/oracle/app/product/10.20.0/db_1`, then these are the required files.

```
chmod o+rx /oracle/app
```

```
chmod o+rx /oracle/app/product
```

```
chmod o+rx /oracle/app/product/10.20.0
```

```
chmod o+rx /oracle/app/product/10.20.0/db_1
```

3. Verify that the `$ORACLE_HOME` environment variable is set, and update the mode for these files.

```
chmod o+rx $ORACLE_HOME
```

```
chmod o+rx $ORACLE_HOME/jdbc
```

```
chmod o+rx $ORACLE_HOME/jdbc/lib
```

```
chmod o+rx $ORACLE_HOME/ldap
```

```
chmod o+rx $ORACLE_HOME/ldap/mesg
```

```

chmod o+r $ORACLE_HOME/ldap/mesg/*
chmod o+rx $ORACLE_HOME/network
chmod o+rx $ORACLE_HOME/network/admin
chmod o+rx $ORACLE_HOME/sqlplus
chmod o+rx $ORACLE_HOME/sqlplus/mesg
chmod o+r $ORACLE_HOME/sqlplus/mesg/splus.msb
chmod o+r $ORACLE_HOME/sqlplus/mesg/sp2us.msb
chmod o+rx $ORACLE_HOME/nls
chmod o+rx $ORACLE_HOME/nls/data
chmod o+r $ORACLE_HOME/nls/data/lx1boot.nlb
chmod o+r $ORACLE_HOME/nls/data/*
chmod o+rx $ORACLE_HOME/oracore
chmod o+rx $ORACLE_HOME/oracore/zoneinfo
chmod o+r $ORACLE_HOME/oracore/zoneinfo/timezlrq.dat

```

Collect Oracle Data

To collect Oracle data, you must collect the Oracle data types from the machines hosting the Oracle instances.

Prerequisites

Verify that the Oracle instances are added to VCM and correctly configured. See ["Edit Oracle Instances" on page 118](#).

Procedure

1. On the toolbar, click **Collect**.
2. On the Collection Type page, select **Machine Data** and click **OK**.
3. On the Machines page, select the Solaris machines hosting the Oracle instances.
4. Select **Do not limit collection to deltas** and click **Next**.
5. On the Data Types page, configure the collected data type.
 - a. Expand the UNIX data type.
 - b. Select **Oracle - Management Views**.
 - c. Select **Use default filters**.
 - d. Click **Next**.
6. On the Important page, verify that there are no conflicts with previously scheduled or running jobs, and click **Finish**.

The amount of time the first collection requires is determined by the number of machines and network connectivity.

What to do next

- Select **Administration > Job Manager > History > Instant Collections > Past 24 Hours** to determine if the collection finished successfully.
- Review collected data and manage your Oracle instances. See ["Oracle Collection Results" on page 124](#).

Oracle Collection Results

You use the collected Oracle data to manage your Oracle instances. The data is available for several management actions.

The displayed data is only as current as the last time that you collected the data.

| Option | Description |
|------------|--|
| Console | <p>Displays security information for users, roles, privileges, configuration settings, and database parameters for Oracle instances. The data in these views is collected from views in each Oracle instance on supported Solaris machines.</p> <p>To view the collected data, click Console and select Enterprise Applications > Oracle > Management Views.</p> |
| Compliance | <p>Determines if the collected data from target machines meets specified compliance values.</p> <p>To run compliance checks, click Compliance and select Machine Group Compliance and follow the steps described in the online help to create rule groups, rules, filters, and templates.</p> |
| Reports | <p>Creates custom Oracle reports based on collected Oracle management views data. Reports are run against currently collected data. Depending on the volume or complexity of the data requested in a report, it might take time to generate the report. See the online help for information about scheduling and disseminating reports.</p> <p>To create Oracle reports, click Reports and select Machine Group Reports.</p> |

Configuring Mac OS X Machines

To collect Mac OS X data and to manage your physical or virtual Mac OS X machines, you must add the machines, license them for use, and install the appropriate VCM Agent.

Mac OS X machines are managed in conjunction with UNIX machines.

Procedure

1. ["Add Mac OS X Machines" on page 125](#)

Add Mac OS X machines to the Available Machines list to make the machines available for licensing.

2. ["License Mac OS X Machines" on page 126](#)

License Mac OS X machines before you install the Agent and begin to manage them. You license the machines displayed in the Available Machines list.

3. ["Install the Agent on Mac OS X Machines" on page 127](#)

Install the appropriate version of the VCM Agent on each of your licensed target machines to enable communication between the Collector and the managed Mac OS X machines.

4. ["Collect Mac OS X Data" on page 132](#)

When the Mac OS X machines are licensed and the Agent is installed, you collect data from those machines.

Continuous machine management is based on the latest data you collect from target machines. You can view data and run actions, such as reports or compliance, based on the collected data. See ["UNIX/Linux Collection Results" on page 116](#).

Add Mac OS X Machines

Add Mac OS X machines to the Available Machines list to make the machines available for licensing.

If you add a large number of machines, you can use other methods to add the machines. See the online help for procedures to import machine information from a file or use IP Discovery.

NOTE You can use the Discovered Machines Import Tool (DMIT), which imports machines discovered by the Network Mapper (Nmap), to import many physical and virtual machines at one time into the VCM database. Download DMIT from the VMware Web site.

Prerequisites

Verify that you know the name or IP address, domain, domain type, machine type, and the communication port for the machines to add.

Procedure

1. Click **Administration**.
2. Select **Machines Manager > Available Machines**.
3. Click **Add Machines**.
4. On the Add Machines page, select **Basic** and click **Next**.
5. On the Manually Add Machines - Basic page, add the machine information.
 - a. Configure machine information.

| Option | Action |
|--------------|---|
| Machine | Type the name of the machine. You can use NetBIOS or Fully-Qualified Domain Name (FQDN) notation for the name. If your Collector cannot resolve a host name with a DNS Server, use an IP address rather than a machine name. |
| Domain | Type or select the domain to which the machine belongs. |
| Type | Select the domain type. |
| Machine Type | Select the machine type. |
| Port | Type the port number. The default value is 26542 when you select a UNIX/Linux or Mac OS X machine type. The port number must be the same number used when you install the Agent on the managed Mac OS X machine. |

- b. Click **Add**.
 - c. To add other machines, configure the machine information and click **Add**.
 - d. After you add the target machines, click **Next**.
6. On the Important page, review the machine information and click **Finish**.
The machine is added to the Available Machines data grid.

What to do next

License the machine. See ["License Mac OS X Machines" on page 126](#).

License Mac OS X Machines

License Mac OS X machines before you install the Agent and begin to manage them. You license the machines displayed in the Available Machines list.

Prerequisites

- Verify that you added the Mac OS X machines. See ["Add Mac OS X Machines" on page 125](#).
- Verify that the machines you are licensing have a specified Machine Type. Machines without a Machine Type value will not be licensed.

Procedure

1. Click **Administration**.
2. Select **Machines Manager > Available Machines**.
3. Select the machines and click **License**.
4. On the Machines page, verify that the Selected list includes the machines to license and click **Next**.
5. On the Product License Details page, review the licensed machine count and click **Next**.
6. On the Important page, click **Finish**.

What to do next

Install the Agent on the target machines. See ["Install the Agent on Mac OS X Machines" on page 127](#)

Install the Agent on Mac OS X Machines

Install the appropriate version of the VCM Agent on each of your licensed target machines to enable communication between the Collector and the managed Mac OS X machines.

Installing the Agent on Mac OS X machines is a manual operation. The Agent is packaged as a Universal Binary Installer. You can run the installation process in silent mode or interactive mode. To run the installation in silent mode, you must edit the configuration options in the `csi.config` file. The file is edited to accommodate different target machine types.

Prerequisites

- Verify that the machine on which you intend to install the Agent has enough free disk space. For more information, see the *VCM Installation Guide*.
- If you run an installation in silent mode, modify the appropriate `csi.config` file variable options. See ["Installation Options for Max OS X csi.config" on page 130](#).
- If you select `(x) inetd/launchd` for `CSI_AGENT_RUN_OPTION`, verify that `(x) inetd/launchd` is running on the target machines. On some versions, when `(x) inetd/launchd` services are not configured, `(x) inetd/launchd` will not stay running. To ensure the Agent installation completes successfully, pass a `- stayalive` option to `(x) inetd/launchd`. See ["Installation Options for Max OS X csi.config" on page 130](#).
- Log in to the target Mac OS X machine as `root`, or have `sudo` as `root`.
- Select the method that you want to use to copy files to the target machines. You can use `ftp`, `sftp`, or `cp` using an NFS share. If you use `ftp` to copy the package to your machine, you must use binary mode.

Procedure

1. Copy the appropriate Agent binary installation package from the Collector to the machine on which you will install the Agent.

The Agent packages are located on the Collector in \Program Files (x86)\VMware\VCM\Installer\Packages.

| Operating System Version | Agent Binary |
|-------------------------------------|--------------------------|
| Mac OS X (Version 10.5, 10.6, 10.7) | CMAgent.<version>.Darwin |

2. On the target machine, run `chmod u+x <filename>` to set the execute permission for the file owner on the Agent binary file.
3. In the directory to which you copied the file, run `./CMAgent.<version>.<Agent binary name>` to create the necessary directory structure and extract the files.

To force an overwrite of any existing files, include the `-o` option. For example:
`/CMAgent.<version>.Darwin -o.`

The command and output is similar to the following example, but with different file names depending on the operating system.

```
# ./CMAgent.<version>.Darwin
UnZipSFX 5.51 of 22 May 2004, by Info-ZIP (http://www.info-zip.org).
creating: CSIInstall/
inflating: CSIInstall/CMAgent.5.1.0.Darwin.i386
inflating: CSIInstall/CMAgent.5.1.0.Darwin.ppc
inflating: CSIInstall/csi.config
inflating: CSIInstall/InstallCMAgent
```

4. Run `cd <extractedpath>/CSIInstall` to change the directory to the location where the `InstallCMAgent` executable file was extracted.
5. Run `ls -la` to validate that the correct files are in the `<extractedpath>/CSIInstall` directory.

| File | Description |
|-----------------------------|---|
| <code>InstallCMAgent</code> | Installation script. |
| <code>csi.config</code> | Configuration file for the installation. This is the file you can modify to include installation options for silent rather than interactive installation processes. |
| <code>packages</code> | Installation packages. |
| <code>scripts</code> | Scripts required for the installation. |

6. (Optional) Edit the `csi.config` file to customize the installation variables and save your changes.
 - a. Run the `chmod u+x csi.config` command to add write file permissions if the file has only read permissions set.
 - b. Modify the `csi.config` file options based on your local requirements and save the file.
 - c. Copy the modified and saved `csi.config` file to the extracted location.

For example, # `cp /<safelocation>/csi.config
/<extractedlocation>/CSIInstall/csi.config.`

7. Run `InstallCMAgent` in either silent mode or interactive mode.

| Option | Action |
|------------------|--|
| Silent mode | <p>Run the # <code>./CSIInstall/InstallCMAgent -s</code> command.</p> <p>Install the Agent using the silent mode if you manually edited the <code>csi.config</code> file, if you modified the <code>csi.config</code> file using the interactive method, or if you are using a custom configuration file that you saved from a previous Agent installation. This mode uses the values specified in <code>csi.config</code> without prompting for input.</p> <p>When the silent installation finishes, a summary of the installation process and status appears. Verify that the installation finished without errors.</p> |
| Interactive mode | <p>Run the # <code>./CSIInstall/InstallCMAgent</code> command.</p> <p>Install the Agent using the interactive mode if you did not modify the <code>csi.config</code> and to respond to each prompt to accept or change each parameter in the <code>csi.config</code> file as it runs. As a result of your responses, the <code>csi.config</code> is modified.</p> <p>The preinstallation stage of interactive mode checks for a valid user, <code>CSI_USER</code>. If the user exists, you are not prompted for these configuration values.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ <code>CSI_USER_NO_LOGIN_SHELL</code> ■ <code>CSI_USER_PRIMARY_GROUP</code> ■ <code>CSI_USER_PRIMARY_GID</code> ■ <code>CSI_USER_USE_NEXT_AVAILABLE_LOCAL_GID</code> <p>You are prompted for these values only when the <code>CSI_USER</code> user account is not found.</p> <p>The User and the Group are created in the local directory service storage.</p> |

You can check the installation status in the installation log file. The file is located in `<CSI_PARENT_DIRECTORY>/log/install.log`.

8. Run `ls -la /CSI_PARENT_DIRECTORY/CMAgent` to verify that all the required files and directories were installed.

`/CSI_PARENT_DIRECTORY/CMAgent` is the default directory. If you changed the directory name during installation, modify the `ls -la` command to display the custom directory name.

```
drwxr-x--- 3 root cfgsoft 4096 Jul 2 17:34 Agent
drwxr-x--- 3 root cfgsoft 4096 Jul 2 17:34 CFC
-rw-rw---- 1 root cfgsoft 49993 Jul 2 17:34 CSIRegistry
-rw-rw---- 1 root cfgsoft 0 Jul 2 17:34 .CSIRegistry.lck
drwxrwx--- 3 csi_acct cfgsoft 4096 Jul 2 17:34 data
```

```

drwxrwx--- 3 root cfgsoft 4096 Jul 2 17:34 ECMu
drwxr-x--- 6 root cfgsoft 4096 Jul 2 17:34 install
lrwxrwxrwx 1 root root 20 Jul 2 17:34 log -> /var/log/CMAgent/log
dr-xr-x--x 3 root cfgsoft 4096 Jul 2 17:34 ThirdParty
drwxr-xr-x 2 root root 4096 Jul 2 17:34 uninstall

```

- Run `# netstat -na | grep <port_number>` to verify that the Agent is installed correctly, listening on the assigned port, and ready to collect data.

The default `<port_number>` is 26542 for VCM installations.

What to do next

Run a collection for Mac OS X data. See ["Collect Mac OS X Data" on page 132](#).

Installation Options for Max OS X `csi.config`

The installation options are variables you add or modify in the `csi.config` file used when you install the Agent. You can create several versions of this file based on operating system or specific settings, but do not change the file name.

| Installation Options with Default Values | Description |
|--|--|
| <code>CSI_AGENT_RUN_OPTION</code> | <p>You can install the Agent as a daemon process or installed to be run by <code>inetd/xinetd/launchd</code>.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> A value of <code>inetd</code> installs the Agent for execution by <code>inetd/xinetd/launchd</code>. A value of <code>daemon</code> installs the agent for execution as a daemon process. |
| <code>CSI_NO_LOGIN_SHELL=</code> <code>+D</code> <code>:/sbin/noshell+/bin/false+</code> <code>/sbin/false+/usr/bin/false</code> <code>+/sbin/nologin</code> | <p>The <code>CSI_USER</code> account must not have a login shell. This parameter lists all valid no-login shells and is used to verify the <code>CSI_USER</code> has no-login shell.</p> <p>If your system has a valid no login shell that is not listed, you append a plus sign and add the no login shell to the list.</p> <p>The options available for this parameter include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <code>+D</code> means only for Darwin (Mac OS X) <code>+</code> means for all operating systems |
| <code>CSI_CREATE_USER=Y</code> | Keep the default value. Indicates whether the user will be created. |
| <code>CSI_USER_ID=501</code> | Keep the default value. Integer value for the user ID of the created user. |
| <code>CSI_USER_NO_LOGIN_SHELL=/bin/false</code> | Keep the default value. Indicates the no-login shell value to use when you create the user. |
| <code>CSI_USER_PRIMARY_GROUP=csi_acct</code> | Keep the default value. Group name to use when you create a new user as the user's primary group. This group is for low security access. Most inspections are executed with the lowest possible privileges using this group while also preventing access by way of this group to the high security group privileges. |
| <code>CSI_CREATE_USER_PRIMARY_</code> | Keep the default value. Indicates the need to create a low-security |

| Installation Options with Default Values | Description |
|---|--|
| GROUP=Y | primary group for the CSI_USER. |
| CSI_USER_PRIMARY_GID=501 | Keep the default value. Create user's primary Group ID. |
| CSI_USER_USE_NEXT_AVAILABLE_LOCAL_GID=Y | Keep the default value. Setting this option to Y allows the Group ID to be the next available local Group ID over CSI_USER_PRIMARY_GID. |
| CSI_USER=csi_acct | Keep the default value. The user assigned to the cfgsoft group. The CSI listener process runs under this user. |
| CSI_CFGSOFT_GID=500 | Keep the default value. The Group ID of the cfgsoft group. This value can change if the GID is already in use. This group is for high-security access. Some inspections require root privileges, which are provided indirectly through this group and setuid to root. |
| CSI_CREATE_LOCAL_GROUP=Y | Keep the default value. Setting this option to Y allows the cfgsoftgroup to be created. This setting allows the system call to groupadd. |
| CSI_USE_NEXT_AVAILABLE_LOCAL_GID=Y | Keep the default value. Setting this option to Y allows this Group ID to be the next available local Group ID starting at CSI_CFGSOFT_GID. |
| CSI_AGENT_PORT=26542 | Keep the default value. Specifies the port on which the Agent listens. |
| CSI_CREATE_LOCAL_SERVICE=Y | Keep the default value. Setting CSI_CREATE_LOCAL_SERVICE to Y allows the system to create the local service (copy files to system directories). |
| CSI_REFRESH_INETD=Y | This option does not apply to Mac OS X. |
| CSI_NICE=10 | Keep the default value. Sets the nice value for the agent listener process. |
| CSI_CERTIFICATE_PATH= | Specifies the path to Collector Certificates. The certificates specified at this path are copied to the Agent. If your Collector Certificates are stored in an accessible location on this machine, you use this option to put the certificates in the Agent location. You should install the Enterprise Certificates so that multiple collector instances collecting from the same set of Agents is supported. If this package was copied from a collector installation, this package already contains that Collector's Enterprise Certificate. |
| CSI_PARENT_DIRECTORY=/opt | Specifies the parent directory of the CM Agent. The root directory of CMAgent will be CSI_PARENT_DIRECTORY/CMAgent. |
| CSI_PARENT_DATA_DIRECTORY=/opt | Specifies the parent directory of the CMAgent data directory. The data directory will be CSI_PARENT_DATA_DIRECTORY/CMAgent/data. |

| Installation Options with Default Values | Description |
|--|--|
| CSI_PARENT_LOG_DIRECTORY=default | Specifies where agent operational log files are kept. The log directory is CSI_PARENT_LOG_DIRECTORY/CMAgent/log. The default value indicates to use these values. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Mac OS X: log ->private/var/log/CMAgent/log |
| CSI_KEEP_CSIINSTALL=N | Recommend keeping the default value. After a successful installation, the temp installation directory CSIInstall is deleted. To keep this installation directory, set this parameter to Y. |

Manually Uninstall the Mac OS X Agent

When you install the Agent, an uninstall file, `UninstallCMAgent`, is created in `<path>/CMAgent/uninstall`. You use the file to manually uninstall the Agent from the managed machine.

The uninstall reverses all changes made by installation. However, the installation log files are retained in `<AgentRoot>/install`. `<AgentRoot>` defaults to the CMAgent directory that was created during installation.

Prerequisite

To save a copy of the configuration file to use on other machines, copy `csi.config` to a secure location. The file is located in `<path>/CMAgent/install`.

Procedure

1. Navigate up one level from the uninstall directory in the CMAgent directory.
2. Run the `# ./uninstall/UninstallCMAgent` command to uninstall the Agent.

What to do next

After you run `UninstallCMAgent`, delete the remaining the CMAgent directory before you install a new Agent.

Collect Mac OS X Data

When the Mac OS X machines are licensed and the Agent is installed, you collect data from those machines.

Collecting data from machines adds the collected machine information to the VCM database and makes the machine data available for reporting, running compliance, and other management options. The collection process for Mac OS X collection is similar to other collections, including Windows, except that you select Mac OS X data types during the collection instead of Windows data types.

Prerequisites

- License the target machines. See ["License Mac OS X Machines" on page 126](#).
- Install the Agent on the target machines. See ["Install the Agent on Mac OS X Machines" on page 127](#).

Procedure

1. Click **Collect**.

2. On the Collection Type page, select **Machine Data** and click **OK**.
3. On the Machines page, select the machines from which you are collecting data and click **Next**.
4. On the Data Types page, configure the collection and click **Next**.
 - a. Select the **Select All** check box.
 - b. Select **Use default filters**.
5. On the Important page, verify that there are no conflicts with previously scheduled or running jobs, and click **Finish**.
 The amount of time the first collection requires is determined by the number of machines and network connectivity.
6. Click Administration and select **Job Manager > History > Instant Collections > Past 24 Hours** to determine if the collection finished.

What to do next

- Review your collected data. See ["Mac OS X Collection Results" on page 133](#).

Collected Mac OS X Data Types

The collected Mac OS X data types that you can collect include related UNIX/Linux and specific Mac OS X data types.

- Custom Information - subset of CITs
- Environment Settings - Properties
- File System - File Structure
- IP Information - General
- IP Information - Routing
- IP Information - Interfaces (IF)
- IP Information - Open Ports
- Machines - General
- Machines - Power Management
- Processes - launchctl
- Security - Users > Current
- Security - Users > Information
- Security - Groups
- Properties files (.plist)
- System Logs > syslog events

Mac OS X Collection Results

Mac OS X data is displayed in VCM and is available for several management actions.

The displayed data is only as current as the last time you collected the data.

| Option | Description |
|------------|--|
| Console | <p>Displays dashboards and summary reports based on collected data. You use the Console to view data relevant to day-to-day operations, troubleshooting, and analysis.</p> <p>The displayed data is based on the collected Mac OS X data types. See the online help for a list of currently collected data types.</p> <p>To view the dashboards, click Console and select Dashboards > UNIX.</p> <p>To view the summary reports, click Console and select UNIX tab > Operating System > Machines > General. You can view the data in a summary report or data grid format.</p> |
| Reports | <p>Runs preconfigured VCM reports or create custom reports. Reports are run against currently collected data. Depending on the volume or complexity of the data requested in a report, it may take time to generate the report. Refer to the online help for information about scheduling and disseminating reports.</p> <p>To use the reporting options, click Reports and select Machine Group Reports > UNIX.</p> |
| Compliance | <p>Determines if the collected data from target machines meets specified compliance values, and allows you to run compliance remediation actions.</p> <p>To run a compliance check, click Compliance and select Machine Group Compliance and follow the steps described in the online help to create rule groups, rules, filters, and templates.</p> |
| Patching | <p>Assesses target machines to determine if the machines have the most current patches. If the patches are not yet installed, you can install the latest patches on the target machines.</p> <p>To assess and patch machines, select Patching, and select your target operating system.</p> |

Patching Managed Machines

VCM Patching is the VCM patch assessment, deployment, and verification capability, which ensures continuous security throughout your environment by proactive compliance of your IT infrastructure. VCM Patching ensures that your machines have the latest security patches and other software installed. You can evaluate each machine in your environment to ensure that the machines have the latest Microsoft security bulletins or supported UNIX and Linux vendor patches installed, and deploy the recommended patches to each machine.

VCM 5.5 and later do not include the Patch Administrator role. If you previously assigned the Patch Administrator role to a user, either reassign a different role to the user or let the user know that the role no longer exists.

Before you patch Windows 2008 servers and Windows 7 machines, verify that the Windows Update service is running. This service must not be disabled or the patch deployment will fail.

IMPORTANT For VCM Patching to assess Windows systems correctly, you must have a current collection of File System, Hot Fix, Registry, and Services data. VCM Patching uses the File System, Registry, and Services data to determine which applications that might require patches are installed and running, and uses the Hot Fix data to determine which patches are installed on the machines. VCM Patching for UNIX and Linux machines collects the data when you perform an assessment.

VCM Patching for Windows Machines

VCM Patching for Windows machines helps you deploy patches to bring Windows machines into compliance.

- **Bulletins:** Lists Microsoft bulletins available to VCM Patching. View these bulletins either by bulletin or by affected product.
- **Assessment Templates:** Contains one or more patch bulletins. When you run an assessment, Windows machines that require the patches appear. You can select bulletins or product names to create templates.
- **Imported Templates:** Associates Windows machines with patches for the deployment of those patches to selected machines. Use these user-defined templates with Windows machines.
- **VCM Patching Administration:** Configures email notifications, proxy server and logon information, machine group mapping for custom patching, and administration tasks for Windows, UNIX, and Linux machines.

VCM Patching for UNIX and Linux Machines

VCM Patching for UNIX and Linux machines helps you deploy patches to bring UNIX and Linux machines into compliance.

- **Bulletins:** Lists vendor bulletins available to VCM Patching.
- **Assessment Templates:** Contains one or more patch bulletins. When you run an assessment, UNIX and Linux machines that require the patches appear. You can select bulletins or product names to create templates.
- **Imported Templates:** Associates UNIX and Linux machines with patches for the deployment of those patches to selected machines. Use these user-defined templates with UNIX and Linux machines.
- **Assessment Results:** Displays the results of your patch assessment for all bulletins or for specific bulletins.
- **VCM Patching Administration:** Configures email notifications, proxy server and logon information, machine group mapping for custom patching, and administration tasks for Windows, UNIX, and Linux machines.

UNIX and Linux Patch Assessment and Deployment

VCM Patching includes UNIX and Linux patch assessment and deployment, which you use to determine the patch status of UNIX and Linux machines.

NOTE Assessments of UNIX and Linux machines operate differently from Windows assessments. UNIX and Linux assessments require you to collect new data. Windows assessments are performed against previously collected data.

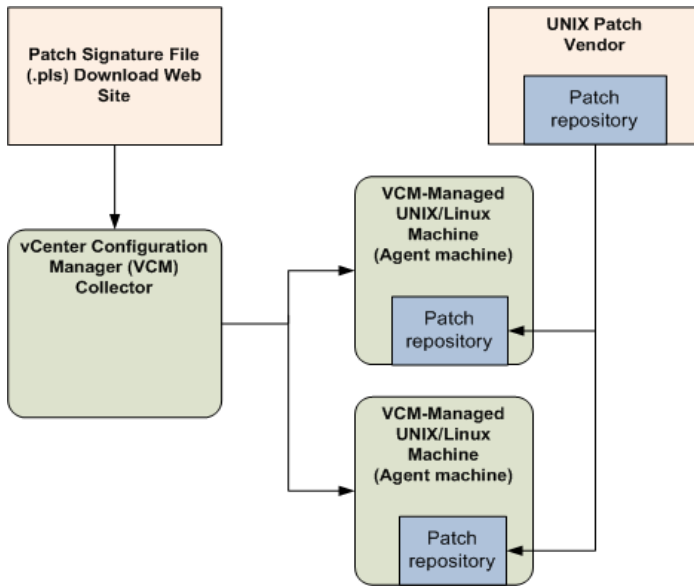
Before you use VCM Patching to install patches on UNIX and Linux machines, you must collect patch assessment data from those machines.

VCM Patching for UNIX and Linux involves the following steps.

1. Check for patch bulletin updates from the download site.
New PLS files are downloaded to the VCM Collector.
2. Use VCM to collect and assess machine data from managed machines.
During the collection, the PLS files are sent to the managed UNIX/Linux machines.
3. Use VCM to explore the assessment results and determine the patches to deploy.
4. Acquire and store the patches using FTP, HTTP, or any other method.
5. Use the VCM Deploy wizard to install the UNIX patches on the managed machines.

VCM Patching for UNIX and Linux is illustrated in the following diagram.

Figure 10–1. UNIX and Linux Patch Assessment and Deployment Process



To verify that VCM supports your UNIX and Linux machines for patch deployment, see the *VCM Installation Guide*.

VCM provides patch assessment content in a new format for several Red Hat and SUSE versions. See ["New UNIX Patch Assessment Content" on page 137](#). For the operating system versions supported, see the *VCM Installation Guide*.

New UNIX Patch Assessment Content

VCM provides patch assessment content in a new format for several Red Hat and SUSE versions. For the operating system versions supported, see the *VCM Installation Guide*. All other UNIX and Linux versions use the standard content architecture.

When the VCM 5.4.1 or later Agent is installed on these machines, VCM supports patch assessments using the new content architecture.

With the new patch assessment content, VCM updates the information required to assess the patch status of your VCM managed Red Hat and SUSE machines. Results for the new and standard patch assessment content formats appear together in a single view in VCM. Use these results to analyze the patch status of all versions of your Red Hat and SUSE machines regardless of the VCM Agent version installed on them.

Patch deployment to all Red Hat and SUSE managed machines that include a combination of VCM pre-5.4.1 and 5.4.1 or later Agents installed uses a single action. In earlier versions of supported Red Hat and SUSE operating systems that have a pre-5.4.1 Agent installed, the pre-5.4.1 content is enabled automatically for patch assessments.

Patch Bulletin Name Changes

In the assessment results, patch bulletins appear with titles that differ from the standard content.

| Managed Machine | New Bulletin Title | Standard Bulletin Title |
|--------------------------------|--|---|
| Red Hat 4, 5, and 6 | RHBA-2005:356-06 | RH 2005:356-06 (RHBA) |
| SUSE SLES 10.0-10.4, 11.0-11.1 | Novell SUSE 2010-09-16 x86_64: Security update for bzip2 | Novell Linux 2010-09-16 x86_64: Security update for bzip2 |

The `.pls` files use new names. Red Hat file names include `Red Hat` instead of `RH`, and SUSE file names include `Novell SUSE` instead of `Novell Linux`.

Patch Assessment Content Private Repository

The new patch assessment content architecture uses a private YUM repository to contain the VCM patch assessment content for Red Hat and SUSE machines. This content supports several Red Hat and SUSE versions that have the VCM 5.4.1 or later Agent installed.

The VCM 5.4.1 installation process installs the repository in the `CMAgent` directory on the Collector machine. During a UNIX patch assessment of the Red Hat or SUSE machines, VCM copies the repository from the Collector to the managed machines. VCM Patching accesses the content in this repository to perform the patch assessments on those machines.

Installed Patch Assessment Files

A patch assessment of the Red Hat and SUSE machines creates several files in the `/tmp` directory. These files include `yr1.txt`, `yli.txt`, and `yls.txt`. At the start of each patch assessment process, VCM removes these files and recreates them during the patch assessment.

When you perform a patch assessment of the Red Hat or SUSE machines, the VCM 5.4.1 or later Agent installation process uses a script named `mcscan` to access the local private repository on the managed machine. The `mcscan` script resides in the `/usr/bin/` directory on the managed machine.

Patch Assessment Content Download Settings

The administration settings in VCM enable the patch assessment content download to the Collector. During a patch assessment, the Collector copies the patch assessment content to your Red Hat and SUSE machines based on the VCM Linux Agent installed on those machines.

- Managed machines that have the VCM 5.4.1 or later Agent installed use the new content architecture.
- Managed machines that have the VCM 5.4.0 or earlier Agent installed use the standard content architecture.

Getting Started with VCM Patching

Use VCM Patching to assess the state of managed Windows, UNIX, and Linux machines, and deploy patches to those machines.

["Getting Started with VCM Patching for Windows Machines" on page 138](#)

["Getting Started with VCM Patching for UNIX and Linux Machines" on page 146](#)

Getting Started with VCM Patching for Windows Machines

Use VCM Patching to determine the patch status of Windows machines and deploy patches to those machines.

Prerequisites

To deploy patches to Windows or UNIX/Linux machines, UNIX machines in single-user mode, or AIX machines, you must understand the actions in the deployment and perform several prerequisites. See ["Prerequisites for Patch Deployment" on page 141](#).

Procedure

1. ["Check for Updates to Bulletins" on page 139](#)
Use VCM Patching to check the Web for updates to patch bulletins, which you can use in assessments of machines to enforce compliance.
2. ["Collect Data from Windows Machines by Using the VCM Patching Filter Sets" on page 139](#)
Collect data from Windows machines to obtain the current patch status. VCM Patching requires you to collect current information about the File System, Hotfixes, Registry, and Services Windows data types.
3. ["Assess Windows Machines" on page 140](#)
Use an assessment template to assess the patching status of Windows machines.
4. ["Review VCM Patching Windows Assessment Results" on page 141](#)
View the assessed Windows machines. The Assessment Results data grid displays the Windows machines that were assessed, the patch status for each machine, and details about the patches.
5. ["Deploy Patches to Windows Machines" on page 144](#)
Deploy patches to Windows machines that are managed by VCM Patching.
6. ["Collect Data from Windows Machines by Using the VCM Patching Filter Sets" on page 139](#)
Collect data again from Windows machines to obtain the updated patch status.
7. ["Assess Windows Machines" on page 140](#)
Run another assessment to assess the updated patch status of Windows machines.

Check for Updates to Bulletins

Use VCM Patching to check the Web for updates to patch bulletins, which you can use in assessments of machines to enforce compliance.

Procedure

1. Click **Patching**.
2. Select **Windows > Bulletins**.
3. To obtain a comprehensive view of all released bulletins, click **By Bulletin**.
4. To find a bulletin for an installed software product, click **By Affected Product**.
5. Select **Check for Update**.
6. If updates exist, download the updates.
Follow the prompts to update your bulletins, force an update to the bulletins, or cancel the request.
7. Click **Finish** to submit the download job to the pending job queue.
When the job is finished running, the content is available in VCM.

Collect Data from Windows Machines by Using the VCM Patching Filter Sets

Collect data from Windows machines to obtain the current patch status. VCM Patching requires you to collect current information about the File System, Hotfixes, Registry, and Services Windows data types.

Procedure

1. On the toolbar, click **Collect**.
2. Select the Windows machines from which to collect data.
3. Select **Select a Collection Filter Set to apply to these machines** and click **Next**.
4. Select the **Patching - Windows Security Bulletins** filter set and click **Next**.

This filter set gathers information for all available Windows security bulletins that you can use to patch Windows machines. Select any monthly filter set to filter the bulletins released in a particular month.

5. If no conflicts appear, click **Finish** to begin the collection.

If problems occur while collecting data from Windows machines using the VCM Patching Filter Sets while using the default Network Authority Account, either give the account access to the Windows servers or use a separate Network Authority Account for these machines. See Default Network Authority Account for more information.

Assess Windows Machines

Use an assessment template to assess the patching status of Windows machines.

Because the assessment is run only against data in the database, you must collect machine patching data before and after you run an assessment. When run, the template checks data collected from machines to confirm whether the patches referenced by the bulletins must be installed on those machines. For example, a template might contain all bulletins related to Internet Explorer 7 to ensure that all of the instances installed have the latest security fixes.

The assessment checks all of the VCM managed machines in the active machine group. A patch deployment applies only to the machines in the machine group that are managed by VCM Patching.

You can create an assessment template based on bulletins or affected software products, or by importing a text file that lists machines that require a particular patch or that lists machine and patch pairs. The following procedure generates an assessment template based on bulletins.

Prerequisite

Review the collected patching data and determine which machines must be patched.

Procedure

1. Click **Patching**.
2. Select **Windows > Bulletins > By Bulletin**.
3. Select a bulletin.
4. Click **Details** and read the technical details about the bulletin, including the affected products and vendor recommendations.
5. Read the Deployment Summary to identify any issues that might interfere with the distribution of the bulletin.
6. Click **On the Web** to link to vendor information about the bulletin.
7. Review all of the bulletins to include in the assessment template.
8. To create a template that includes all of the bulletins for patches to deploy, select all of the relevant bulletins and click **Create Template**.
9. Verify that the bulletins are selected and click **Finish** to create the template.

10. On the VCM toolbar, verify that the correct Machine Group is selected.
11. Click **Patching** and select **Windows > Assessment Templates**.
12. Select the template to run and click **Assess**.
13. When the assessment finishes, click the **Refresh** button on the toolbar and view the assessment results in the data grid.

Review VCM Patching Windows Assessment Results

View the assessed Windows machines. The Assessment Results data grid displays the Windows machines that were assessed, the patch status for each machine, and details about the patches.

Prerequisites

Run an assessment template.

Procedure

1. Click **Patching**.
2. Select **Windows > Assessment Templates**
3. Select the template and view the results in the data grid.
4. View the Patch Status column to determine the state of each machine for the patches listed.
5. If the assessment results provide multiple pages of data, click the **Patch Status** column heading and drag it up to **Column Grouping**.
6. In the Column Grouping view, expand the **Not Patched** status to view all of the machines that are not patched.
7. To display the graphical representation of the patch assessment status, select **Enable/Disable Summary** in the template data grid view to enable the Summary view.
8. Click the template node.

The Summary view displays a graph of the patch status for the machines that were assessed and the patch status by asset classification and bulletin severity rating. The Not Patched column displays machines that require a patch or a reboot for a patch that was applied.

From the Summary view you can navigate to the affected machines.

Prerequisites for Patch Deployment

To deploy patches to Windows or UNIX/Linux machines, UNIX machines in single-user mode, or AIX machines, you must understand the actions in the deployment and perform several prerequisites.

VCM Patching runs assessments of UNIX and Linux machines against the patches that VMware knows at the time when VCM Patching performs the assessment.

VCM saves UNIX and Linux patching change actions in the VCM change log. To check the change log, click **Console** and select **Change Management > VCM or Non VCM Initiated Change > By Data Type > Patch Assessment**. These change actions are available to Compliance and Reports.

IMPORTANT If a failure occurs at any point in the patch deployment job, the System Administrator must check the status of the system, resolve any issues, and then reassess the machines.

VCM Patching Actions

The following actions are available.

- **Agent Install:** VCM Patching installs the Agent component to a machine the first time a patch is deployed to that machine.
- **Agents using HTTP:** If VCM Patching detects that the target machine has an VCM Agent using HTTP, VCM Patching will route the deployment through VCM as a remote command job.

Prerequisites

- Test all patches before you deploy them.
- Back up critical systems. Before you deploy selected patches, you must understand their potential impact and create backups of critical systems.
- Set Administrator privileges. If users who do not have Administrator privileges use VCM Patching to deploy patches, you must modify the File-level permissions of the `\\collector_name\cmfiles$\SUM Downloads` share. This default share is shared to Everyone with full control, but the file permissions are more limited and the Everyone group only has read permission on the directory. Make sure that the user, or a group to which the user belongs, has write permission in the download directory.
- Set the timing for multiple patch jobs. When one or more patches are deployed, a job is created for each machine. Click **Patching** and select **Job Management > Windows or UNIX > Job Manager > Scheduled**. If a reboot is required, two jobs are created for each machine, each with the same start time. If you have many machines, or if you selected to download the patches at run time, jobs might exceed the defined window before they time out. If jobs time out, you take the following actions.
 - Increase the setting named "How long before a request will be considered stale (minutes)". Click **Administration** and select **Settings > General Settings > Collector**.
 - Increase the setting named "Maximum Concurrent Agent Installs". Click **Administration**, select **Settings > General Settings > Patching > Windows > Deployment**, and edit the **Collector Option**.
 - Reschedule jobs in Job Manager. Click **Patching** and select **Job Management > Windows or UNIX > Job Manager > Scheduled**.

Acquire the UNIX Patches

After you review the assessment results and determine which patches to deploy, use FTP, HTTP, or another available method to acquire the UNIX patches from the appropriate vendor.

Store the UNIX Patches

Store the UNIX patches in a location that is available locally to the VCM managed machine, such as an NFS mount or a local hard drive. If you store the patches on an NFS mount, you must define the path in machine group mapping. Click **Administration** and select **Settings > General Settings > Patching > Machine Group Mapping**. You can use VCM remote commands or another available method to place the patches on the VCM managed machines.

Patch Repository Management

You must manage your own patch repository. A temporary expansion of the patches occurs in the `/tmp` directory. For single-user mode, patches are extracted to `/var/tmp`. If you do not use Machine Group Mapping to define an alternate location for the patches, the default location of `/tmp` is used.

Machine Group Mapping

When you define an alternate patch location for a particular machine group, you must select that machine group in VCM before you deploy the patches. If you do not select this machine group, VCM Patching will not acknowledge the alternate patch location and the patches will not be deployed. The alternate patch location is defined in machine group mapping. Click **Administration** and select **Settings > General Settings > Patching > Machine Group Mapping**.

Default Location for UNIX/Linux Patches

If you do not define an alternate location for the patches using machine group mapping, VCM Patching uses the default location of `/tmp`. A temporary expansion of the patches occurs in the `/var/tmp` directory.

This directory includes the extracted patches and working files that VCM Patching uses for patch deployment. This location must have enough space for these files.

This location must be available in single user mode because some patches on various operating systems require single-user mode.

Location for UNIX/Linux Patches

When you patch UNIX and Linux machines, copy the patches to a shared location and then specify the local patch path location. Click **Administration** and select **Settings > General Settings > Patching > Machine Group Mapping**.

To Deploy Patches in Single-User Mode on UNIX Machines

If you will deploy patches in single-user mode on UNIX machines, you must perform several actions.

1. Store or extract the patches in a local location other than `/tmp` that will be accessible in single user-mode.
2. If you did not manually extract the files in step 1, ensure enough disk space exists to extract the patches in `/var/tmp`.
3. Set the machine group mapping to the patch path location where you have stored the patches.
4. To successfully deploy UNIX patches in single-user mode, the `at` daemon must be running on the machines where patches are being deployed.

To Deploy Patches Without Changing the Run Level on UNIX Machines

If you will deploy patches without changing the run level on UNIX machines, you must perform several actions.

1. Store or extract the patches in a local location.

Do not use `/tmp` on Solaris machines because this directory will be cleaned out upon reboots that might be initiated by the patches.
2. If you did not manually extract the files in step 1, ensure that enough disk space exists to extract the patches in `/tmp`, or in `/var/tmp` on Solaris machines.
3. Set the machine group mapping to the patch path location where you have stored the patches.
4. To successfully deploy UNIX patches where a reboot is required or requested, the `at` daemon must be running on the machines where patches are being deployed.

You must set the Machine Group mapping for VCM to the location of the patches during deployment. Setting the machine group mapping is especially important when patching in single-user mode because `/tmp` is not always available, and cannot be relied upon for patching with VCM.

Machine Group mappings are not inherited. For example, if under the machine group called UNIX Machines, you create a machine group called Solaris, the machine group mapping that exists for UNIX Machines will not be applied to the Solaris machine group.

To Patch AIX machines

Deploying some patches might fail on AIX machines if the patch prerequisites cannot be resolved by VCM using the downloaded patch bulletin content. This problem can arise with an AIX patch whose status is `StatusNotPatched`, and where the Bulletin Detail indicates a patch dependency on another set of patches whose dependencies cannot be met.

Although dependencies might not appear the Bulletin Detail, one or more currently irresolvable patch dependencies might actually exist. The missing patch prerequisites can occur when some patch versions do not become applicable until after other patches are installed. In particular, Maintenance Level (ML) or Technology Level (TL) packages and their corresponding bulletins that are intended to upgrade between levels might not show as applicable until the ML/TL upgrade has been met or exceeded. For example, if you are applying a patch that depends on an intermediate ML that has not yet been applied, deploying the patch will fail because the prerequisite patch dependency has not been met.

To resolve the patch interdependencies on AIX machines, you must determine the patch strategy used for the filesets/APARS/MLs/TLs that are being updated.

Default Location for UNIX/Linux Patches

If you do not define an alternate location for the patches using machine group mapping, VCM Patching uses the default location of `/tmp`. A temporary expansion of the patches occurs in the `/var/tmp` directory.

This directory includes the extracted patches and working files that VCM Patching uses for patch deployment. This location must have enough space for these files.

This location must be available in single user mode because some patches on various operating systems require single-user mode.

vCenter Software Content Repository Tool

To help you obtain UNIX patches for deployment, use the Software Content Repository Tool, which is available from the Download VMware vCenter Configuration Manager Web site.

Deploy Patches to Windows Machines

Deploy patches to Windows machines that are managed by VCM Patching. These machines appear in the Licensed Machines node. Click **Administration** and select **Machines Manager > Licensed Machines**.

IMPORTANT If a failure occurs at any point in the patch deployment job, the System Administrator must check the status of the system, resolve any issues, and then reassess the machines.

Prerequisites

- Follow the guidelines. See ["Prerequisites for Patch Deployment" on page 141](#).
- Verify that the Windows Update service is running (set to something other than Disabled) before you patch Windows 2008 servers and Windows 7 machines.

Procedure

1. Click **Patching**.
2. Select **Windows > Assessment Templates** and select the template used for the assessment.
3. Make sure the data grid view is visible so that you can view the machines and bulletins.
4. Locate the rows that display the StatusNotPatched status.
To identify the machines that must be patched, group the Patch Status column.
5. Highlight the row that contains the machine to be patched and select **Deploy**.
With VCM Service Desk Integration installed, the Service Desk Connector dialog box appears before the VCM Patching Deploy wizard. VCM Orchestrator must approve the deployment job before it can run.
6. (Optional) Select additional machine and patch combinations to include.
7. Select the machines and patches to deploy and click **Next**.
To detect the patch, the Deploy checks the Collector first, and uses the downloaded patch, if found. If patches are not found, the Deploy wizard attempts to locate the patch on the Internet.
If the patch is found on the Internet, you can choose to download the patch immediately or at run time.
If access to the Internet is denied, you must obtain the patches manually and store them in `\\collector_name\cmfiles$\SUM Downloads` on the Collector.
8. If you selected multiple patches to deploy, confirm the order to deploy the patches or reorder them, and click **Next**.
9. On the Switches page, do not select any switches for the installatio, and click **Next**.
10. On the Patch Staging and Deployment Schedule page, select to copy the patches to the VCM Patching machine during deployment.
11. Select to run the deployment immediately or schedule it to run later, and click **Next**.
12. Click **Next** to either schedule the deploy job or to instruct VCM Patching to execute the job immediately.
13. On the Reboot Options page, select to not reboot the machine and click **Next**.
14. On the confirmation page, click **Finish** to deploy the patch.
When the deployment completes, VCM Patching runs a delta collection of the VCM Patching Security Bulletins filter set to update the assessment information.

What to do next

- To view the status of the deployment job, click **Patching** and select **Job Management > Windows > Job Manager > Running**.
- If you scheduled the job to run later, to view the status of the scheduled deployment, click **Patching** and select **Job Management > Windows > Job Manager > Scheduled > Deployments**.
- In the assessment template data grid view, run another assessment and confirm that the machines you patched are marked as Patched in the assessment results. If a machine is in a pending reboot state, the patch status for the machine is Not Patched.

For more information about scheduled patch deployments for Windows machines, see the online help.

Getting Started with VCM Patching for UNIX and Linux Machines

Use VCM Patching for UNIX/Linux to determine the patch status of UNIX and Linux machines and deploy patches to those machines.

NOTE Assessments of UNIX and Linux machines operate differently from Windows assessments. UNIX and Linux assessments require you to collect new data. Windows assessments are performed against previously collected data.

VCM saves UNIX and Linux patching change actions in the VCM change log. To check the change log, click **Console** and select **Change Management > VCM or Non VCM Initiated Change > By Data Type > Patch Assessment**. These change actions are available to Compliance and Reports.

Prerequisites

- Collect patch assessment data from licensed UNIX and Linux machines.
- Verify that your UNIX and Linux machines and operating systems are supported for patch deployment. See the *VCM Installation Guide*.

Procedure

1. ["Check for Updates to Bulletins" on page 146](#)
Check for updates to VCM Patching bulletins before you assess the patching state of UNIX and Linux machines.
2. ["Collect Patch Assessment Data from UNIX and Linux Machines" on page 147](#)
Collect UNIX and Linux patch assessment data using bulletins, an assessment template, or the Collect wizard.
3. ["Explore Assessment Results and Acquire and Store the Patches" on page 148](#)
View the assessed UNIX and Linux machines. The Assessment Results data grid displays the UNIX and Linux machines that were assessed, the patch status for each machine, and details about the patches.
4. ["Deploy Patches to UNIX/Linux Machines" on page 150](#)
Install the patches on UNIX and Linux machines that are managed by VCM Patching.

Check for Updates to Bulletins

Check for updates to VCM Patching bulletins before you assess the patching state of UNIX and Linux machines.

Prerequisites

Place patch bulletin files on the local machine to load the bulletin updates from a local file.

Procedure

1. Click **Patching**.
2. Select **UNIX/Linux Platform > Bulletins > By Bulletin**.
3. Click **Check for Update**.
4. Select **Check for Updates via the Internet** and click **Next**.

If VCM Patching finds updates, they are downloaded to the local machine. Alternately, you can load the updates from patch bulletin files on the local machine.

Collect Patch Assessment Data from UNIX and Linux Machines

Collect UNIX and Linux patch assessment data using bulletins, an assessment template, or the Collect wizard.

- **Bulletins:** Collect patching data using the Patch Assessment collection filter. Because UNIX and Linux assessments are VCM collections, you can schedule these assessments.
- **Assessment template:** Collect patching data using a template that filters the patch assessment results.
- **Collect wizard:** Collect patching data using the Patch Assessment Data Class filter.

NOTE Assessments of UNIX and Linux machines operate differently from Windows assessments. UNIX and Linux assessments require you to collect new data. Windows assessments are performed against previously collected data.

VCM Patching runs assessments of UNIX and Linux machines against the patches that VMware knows at the time when VCM Patching performs the assessment.

Patch assessments of UNIX and Linux machines are based on the OS version and machine architecture. When you collect assessment data using templates, you must match the bulletins, either 32-bit or 64-bit, to the machine architecture.

If machine data has not been collected, the assessment results might not appear and the machine will not be available for deployment. A patch-machine mismatch status results. You can display or hide the patch-machine mismatch status. Click **Administration** and select **Settings > General Settings > Patching > UNIX > Settings > Bulletin and Update**.

Prerequisites

- Confirm that assessments finished successfully.
- Verify that the patch signature files (.pls files) exist on the Collector.

The .pls files determine whether required patches are installed on the machine. By default, VCM Patching downloads the .pls files every 4 hours.

Patch files appear in the Console. Click **Console** and select **UNIX > Security > Patches > Assessment or Console > Change Management > Non VCM Initiated > By Machine**. During an assessment of the machines using the Patch Assessment Data Class, the .pls files are sent from the Collector to the machine. A delay might occur during this process.
- Verify that the VCM Agent is installed on the UNIX or Linux machine.
- Verify that you have preconfigured filters if you choose **Filters** in the following procedure. See ["Create UNIX and Linux Patch Assessment Filters" on page 148](#).

The following procedure runs the assessment using patch bulletins.

Procedure

1. On the toolbar, select the **All UNIX Machines** machine group.
2. Click **Patching**
3. Select **UNIX/Linux Platform > Bulletins > By Bulletin**.
4. Select **Assess**.
5. In the UNIX Patch Assessment wizard, select **Default Filter** or **Filters**.

If you selected **Filters**, you must select a specific filter.
6. Click **Next** and **Finish** to begin the assessment on all machines in the selected machine group.

7. On the toolbar, click **Jobs** and view the progress of the collection.

The assessment on UNIX and Linux machines uses the Patch Assessment collection filter to perform a collection of all machines in the current machine group, and the results are reported in the Assessment Results node.

8. Select **UNIX/Linux Platform > Assessment Results > All Bulletins** and view the results.

Create UNIX and Linux Patch Assessment Filters

Patch assessment filters identify patch bulletins that meet user-defined filtering criteria. These filters limit the bulletins to use in the assessments, which improves the efficiency of the assessment.

Procedure

1. Click **Administration**.
2. Select **Collection Filters > Filters**.
3. In the Collection Filters data grid, select **Add Filter**.
4. On the Name and Description page, name the filter and click **Next**.
5. On the Data Type page, select **UNIX/Linux**.
6. Select **Patch Assessment** and click **Next**.
7. On the **UNIX Patch Assessment Filters** page, to create a subset of the available bulletins, select **Include Bulletin(s) that match this criteria**.
8. Define the filter criteria using the available settings.
For example, you can create a filter where **Platform = Red Hat** and **Severity = Critical**.
9. Click **Next** and **Finish** to create the filter.
10. In the Collection Filters data grid, scroll or page to the Patch Assessment in the Data Type column and locate the new filter in the Name column.

What to do next


Use the new filter when you run an assessment.








Explore Assessment Results and Acquire and Store the Patches

View the assessed UNIX and Linux machines. The Assessment Results data grid displays the UNIX and Linux machines that were assessed, the patch status for each machine, and details about the patches.

Procedure

1. Click **Patching**.
2. Select **UNIX/Linux Platform > Assessment Results > All Bulletins** to display the patch status of all of the machines that were assessed.
3. To display the assessment results for a single bulletin, select **By Specific Bulletin** and select a bulletin in the center pane.
4. Review the patch status for each machine.

| Icon | Status | Description |
|---|---------|--------------------------------------|
|  | Patched | The patch is applied to the machine. |

| Icon | Status | Description |
|---|------------------------|--|
|  | Patch-Machine Mismatch | The patch OS version or hardware architecture does not match the machine. |
|  | Patch Not Needed | The machine is up-to-date or the intended software product is not installed on the machine. |
|  | Not Patched | The patch is not applied to the machine. |
|  | Error Occurred | An unexpected condition occurred during the assessment of the machine. You can determine additional information about the root cause of the exception by running the Debug Event Viewer at C:\Program Files (x86)\VMware\VCMTools\ecmDebugEventViewer.exe. |
|  | Signature Not Found | The .pls patch file does not exist on the machine and the patch status cannot be determined. |
|  | Incorrect MD5 | The MD5 Hash generated from the patch signature (.pls) file, which contains the content and signature, does not match the expected value on the UNIX or Linux Agent. Be aware that MD5 is NOT validated against the vendor MD5 hash data. |
|  | Patch Status Unknown | The patch status of the machine cannot be determined. |

If machine data has not been collected, the assessment results might not appear and the machine will not be available for deployment. A patch-machine mismatch status results. You can display or hide the patch-machine mismatch status. Click **Administration** and select **Settings > General Settings > Patching > UNIX > Settings > Bulletin and Update**.

Acquire the UNIX Patches

After you review the assessment results and determine which patches to deploy, use FTP, HTTP, or another available method to acquire the UNIX patches from the appropriate vendor.

Store the UNIX Patches

Store the UNIX patches in a location that is available locally to the VCM managed machine, such as an NFS mount or a local hard drive. If you store the patches on an NFS mount, you must define the path in machine group mapping. Click **Administration** and select **Settings > General Settings > Patching > Machine Group Mapping**. You can use VCM remote commands or another available method to place the patches on the VCM managed machines.

Patch Repository Management

You must manage your own patch repository. A temporary expansion of the patches occurs in the `/tmp` directory. For single-user mode, patches are extracted to `/var/tmp`. If you do not use Machine Group Mapping to define an alternate location for the patches, the default location of `/tmp` is used.

Machine Group Mapping

When you define an alternate patch location for a particular machine group, you must select that machine group in VCM before you deploy the patches. If you do not select this machine group, VCM Patching will not acknowledge the alternate patch location and the patches will not be deployed. The alternate patch location is defined in machine group mapping. Click **Administration** and select **Settings > General Settings > Patching > Machine Group Mapping**.

Default Location for UNIX/Linux Patches

If you do not define an alternate location for the patches using machine group mapping, VCM Patching uses the default location of `/tmp`. A temporary expansion of the patches occurs in the `/var/tmp` directory.

This directory includes the extracted patches and working files that VCM Patching uses for patch deployment. This location must have enough space for these files.

This location must be available in single user mode because some patches on various operating systems require single-user mode.

Deploy Patches to UNIX/Linux Machines

Install the patches on UNIX and Linux machines that are managed by VCM Patching.

The deployment assesses whether the patch was installed on the VCM managed machine. The Deploy action exists in the User-created Assessment Template, Imported Template, and Assessment Results for All Bulletins.

IMPORTANT If a failure occurs at any point in the patch deployment job, the System Administrator must check the status of the system, resolve any issues, and then reassess the machines.

Prerequisites

- Verify that your UNIX and Linux machines and operating systems are supported for patch deployment. See the *VCM Installation Guide*.
- Ensure that patch assessments ran successfully.
- Ensure that patches are available locally to the machine.
- Complete the prerequisites. See ["Prerequisites for Patch Deployment" on page 141](#).

The following procedure deploys the patches using All Bulletins.

Procedure

1. Select **Patching > UNIX/Linux platform > Assessment Results > All Bulletins**.
2. Select the patches to deploy.
3. Select **Deploy**.
4. On the Machines & Bulletins page, review the Recommend Action and Data Age and select the machines and patches to deploy.
5. If you deploy multiple patches, on the Confirm Patch Deployment Order page confirm or reorder the patches in the sequence to be deployed.
6. (Optional) If you need to set the machine run level, on the Run Level for Patch Installation page, set the run level for the patch installation and keep in mind that in single-user mode no network is available.

7. (Optional) If you need to specify commands to deploy the patches, on the Command Line Options page specify the options to use.
8. (Optional) If you need to run remote commands as part of the deployment, on the Pre-Deployment and Post-Deployment Remote Commands page select any of the remote commands to apply during the patch deployment.
9. On the Patch Deployment Schedule page, set the timing for the patch deployment job.
10. On the Reboot Options page, select the options to reboot the machine and send a message or select to avoid a reboot.
11. On the Confirmation page, confirm the patch summary information and complete the wizard to deploy the patch.

After you deploy patches, VCM collects assessment data again to confirm the patches were applied.

VCM saves UNIX and Linux patching change actions in the VCM change log. To check the change log, click **Console** and select **Change Management > VCM or Non VCM Initiated Change > By Data Type > Patch Assessment**. These change actions are available to Compliance and Reports.

How the Deploy Action Works

The Deploy action runs a command from the Collector to the VCM managed machines.

The VCM job command performs the following actions.

- Assesses VCM managed machines to determine whether the patch was installed since the last assessment.
- Runs a preinstall script (remote command) if specified.
- Installs the patch that already resides on the VCM managed machine's NFS mounted or local file system.
- Runs a postinstall script (remote command) if specified.
- Assesses whether the patch was installed on the VCM managed machine.

The preinstall and postinstall scripts used in the Deploy actions are remote commands, which differ from using a VCM remote command to install a patch. The patch assessment and deployment process for UNIX and Linux does not use remote commands. If you choose to deploy a patch using a user-created remote command, the patch will not be assessed until you run an assessment.

Running VCM Patching Reports

You can run patch status reports on UNIX and Windows machines based on trends, details, template summary, bulletins, affected software products, and patch deployment history.

With real-time assessment reports you can generate SQL reports for machines assessed against bulletins and affected software products. With the patch deployment history report, you can report on the history of patch deployments using VCM Patching assessment results.

You can generate several reports.

- Create real-time assessment reports by bulletins or products.
- Create real-time assessment reports by affected software products.
- Create real-time assessment reports of bulletins and products.
- Create a patch deployment history report.

When you generate reports, you can take the following actions.

- Manually update VCM Patching Windows content.
- Run reports without Internet access.

Customize Your Environment for VCM Patching

Perform routine maintenance on your VCM configuration management database. With routine maintenance, you can tune the visibility of configuration information so that the policies you develop and the actions you take are appropriate for your IT infrastructure.

To ensure that you retain the correct information for auditing, review the data retention settings and update them appropriately according to your policies.

For more information about VCM Patching, see the online help.

Running and Enforcing Compliance

Using the Compliance module, you define a standard configuration for all machines or multiple standards for different machine groups. Then, you compare machines against these configuration rules to see if the machines are in compliance. In some cases, you can enforce certain settings on the machines that are not in compliance.

Preset rules and templates are available that enable you to begin monitoring system compliance to regulatory (Sarbanes-Oxley, HIPAA, GLBA and FISMA) industry and Microsoft standards. You can create and manage rules and rule groups based on Active Directory (AD) objects and configuration data, or on machine data.

IMPORTANT Compliance does not query individual systems; it only queries the database. If a machine has not been included in a Collection, or the necessary information has not been included in a Collection, or the last Collection is outdated, the Compliance Monitor will measure incorrect or out-of-date data. Therefore, for accurate Compliance monitoring, you must first collect the necessary data.

Getting Started with SCAP Compliance

Security Content Automation Protocol (SCAP) is a suite of standards that enable automated vulnerability management, measurement, and policy compliance evaluation. The VCM SCAP implementation employs or references six open standards that SCAP uses to enumerate, evaluate, and measure the impact of software problems and to report results.

- **Common Configuration Enumeration (CCE)**. A standard of unique identifiers for common system configuration issues
- **Common Vulnerabilities and Exposures (CVE)**. A dictionary of standard identifiers for security vulnerabilities related to software flaws
- **Open Vulnerability and Assessment Language (OVAL)**. An XML standard for security testing procedures and reporting
- **Common Platform Enumeration (CPE)**. Standard identifiers and a dictionary for platform and product naming
- **Extensible Configuration Checklist Description Format (XCCDF)**. A standard for specifying checklists and reporting results
- **Common Vulnerability Scoring System (CVSS)**. A standard for conveying and scoring the impact of

vulnerabilities

To calculate CVSS scores that apply to your unique environment, go to the CVSS scoring Web site, fill in the form, and click the Update Scores button.

<http://nvd.nist.gov/cvss.cfm?calculator&adv&version=2>

Conduct SCAP Compliance Assessments

You import a benchmark, run an SCAP assessment on the managed machines in your environment, review the results, and have the option to export the results.

Procedure

1. ["Import an SCAP Benchmark" on page 154](#)

Add the SCAP benchmark to VCM so that you have the industry-approved set of compliance checks against which to assess your managed machines.

2. ["Run an SCAP Assessment" on page 155](#)

Run an SCAP assessment that compares your managed machine configuration against a profile in a standard SCAP benchmark.

3. ["View SCAP Assessment Results" on page 155](#)

Open and search SCAP assessment results through access in the data grid for the profile against which you measured managed machines.

4. ["Export an SCAP Assessment" on page 155](#)

You can export assessment result output to HTML, XML, CSV, and log files.

Import an SCAP Benchmark

Add the SCAP benchmark to VCM so that you have the industry-approved set of compliance checks against which to assess your managed machines.

Prerequisite

Obtain a copy of the Tier III or Tier IV benchmark bundle ZIP file that you want. The National Institute of Standards and Technology (NIST) National Vulnerability Database (NVD) provides benchmarks for download.

<http://web.nvd.nist.gov/view/ncp/repository>

Procedure

1. Copy the bundle ZIP file to the following folder.
`\\{machine-name}\CMFiles$\SCAP\Import`
2. Click **Compliance**.
3. Select **SCAP Compliance > Benchmarks**.
4. Click **Import**.
5. Highlight the bundle, and click the right arrow to select it for import.
6. Click **Next**.
7. Review your selections and click **Finish**.

Run an SCAP Assessment

Run an SCAP assessment that compares your managed machine configuration against a profile in a standard SCAP benchmark.

Prerequisite

Import the benchmark. See ["Import an SCAP Benchmark" on page 154](#).

Procedure

1. Click **Compliance**.
2. Select **SCAP Compliance > Benchmarks > benchmark name > profile name**.
3. Click **Run Assessment**.
4. Highlight the machines to assess, and click the down arrow to select them.
5. Click **Next** and click **Next** again.
6. Click **Next**, review your selections, and click **Finish**.

A collection job starts, and results are not available until the job finishes. The process differs from the general VCM compliance feature, which looks at existing collection data in the database.

View SCAP Assessment Results

Open and search SCAP assessment results through access in the data grid for the profile against which you measured managed machines.

Where appropriate, VCM includes the corresponding standard identifier in its SCAP assessment results and provides an embedded hyperlink to information about the identifier on Web pages such as those provided by MITRE.

Prerequisite

Generate an assessment. See ["Run an SCAP Assessment" on page 155](#).

Procedure

1. Click **Compliance**.
2. Select **SCAP Compliance > Benchmarks > benchmark name > profile name**.
3. In the data grid, find the row for the machine for which you generated an assessment.
4. In the row, click the ellipsis button for the result format that you generated.

The following format options are available on the data grid.

OVAL HTML
 OVAL XML
 XCDDF HTML
 XCDDF XML

5. In the browser window that displays the assessment result, press **Ctrl+f** to open the search feature, and find the results in which you are interested.

Export an SCAP Assessment

You can export assessment result output to HTML, XML, CSV, and log files. CSV is used for CCE pass/fail results, and log files are for troubleshooting.

Upon successful export, VCM creates a file with a name based on the machine name, output format, and time stamp in the following folder on the Collector.

```
\\{machine-name}\CMFiles$\SCAP\Export
```

You can export the formats that are viewable from the data grid, as well as others.

Prerequisite

Run the assessment. See ["Run an SCAP Assessment" on page 155](#).

Procedure

1. Click **Compliance**.
2. Select **SCAP Compliance > Benchmarks > *benchmark name* > *profile name***.
3. Click **Export**.
4. Highlight the machine for which you want to export assessment results, and click the down arrow to select it.
5. Click **Next**.
6. Select the output and format for the export file, and click **Finish**.

Provisioning Physical or Virtual Machine Operating Systems

12

Operating system (OS) provisioning is the process of installing operating systems to physical or virtual machines. As part of the provisioning process, you can add newly provisioned machines to VCM.

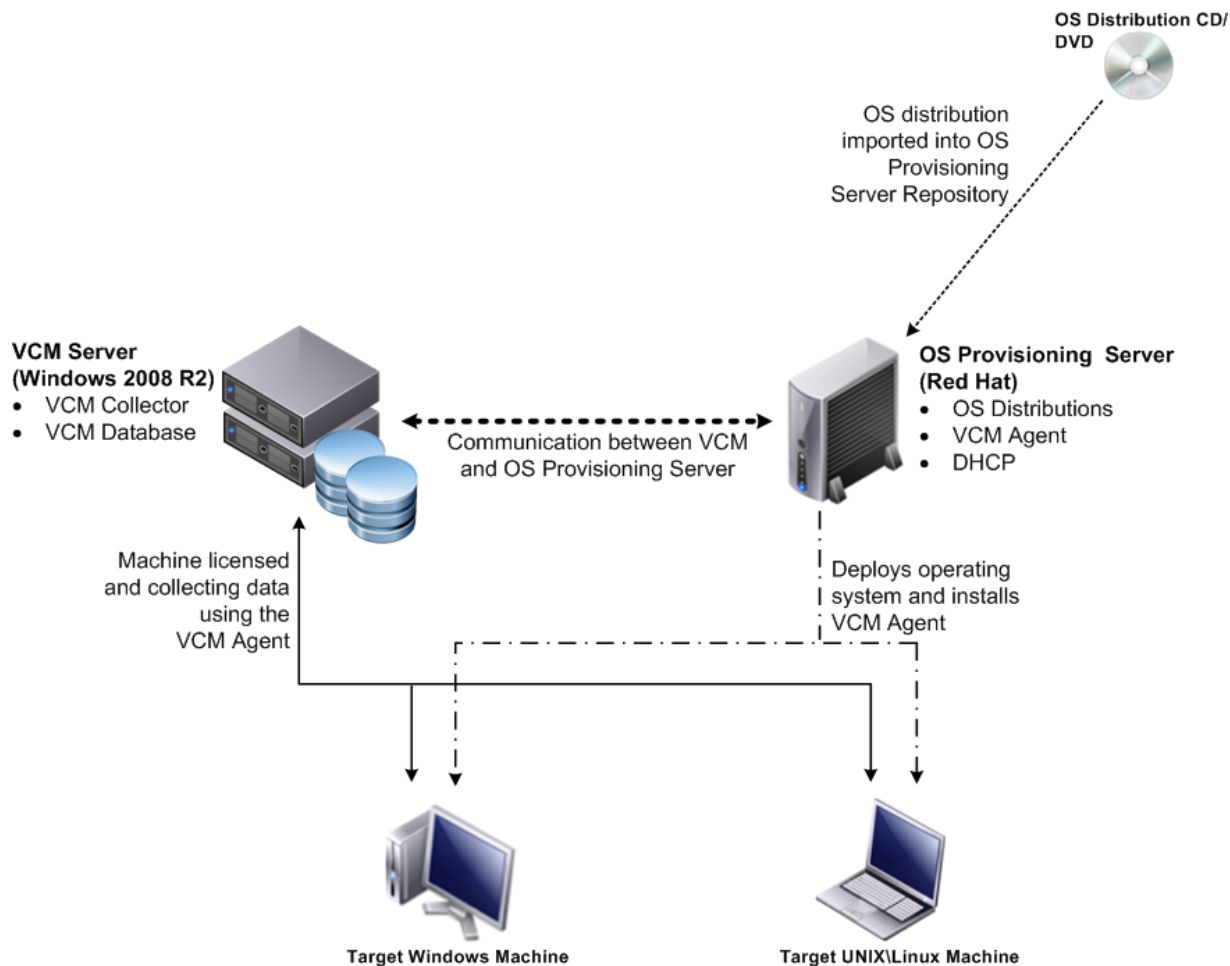
OS provisioning enables you to quickly deploy one or more physical or virtual machines to meet expanding business needs. Some of these machines may have limited use and lifespan, and may be reprovisioned for other purposes. Other machines are provisioned and distributed for long term use.

The provisioning process installs the supported operating system and the VCM Agent. When the target machines are licensed, you can collect machine data, monitor the machines' state and status, and manage the security and compliance of the machines.

Operating System Provisioning Components

The OS provisioning components include the VCM Collector, one or more OS Provisioning Servers, and the target physical or virtual machines.

The OS Provisioning Server, when it is installed and configured in your environment, serves as the engine for OS provisioning. However, the process of initiating provisioning actions is managed through the VCM Console. See [Figure 12-1. Relationship of OS Provisioning Components](#)

Figure 12–1. Relationship of OS Provisioning Components

Patching the Operating System Provisioning Server

Exclude the OS Provisioning Server instances from your automated patching in VCM. Patching the operating system will elevate the minor version and may leave the OS Provisioning Server in an unsupported state.

How Operating System Provisioning Works

The process of provisioning operating systems on physical or virtual machines includes actions that you run in VCM, actions that you perform outside VCM, the underlying processes associated with the actions, and the results.

1. Use VCM to collect the available OS distributions from the OS Provisioning Server.

The collected distributions are displayed in the OS Distributions data grid and are available to install on target machines.
2. Set the BIOS on the target machines to network boot.
3. Connect the target machines to the provisioning network and turn them on.

The OS Provisioning Server discovers the available target machines.
4. Use VCM to collect the discovered target machines from the OS Provisioning Server.

The discovered target machines appear in the Provisionable Machines data grid by MAC address.

5. Use VCM to send the command that includes the provisioning details to the OS Provisioning Server to provision the target machines.

The OS Provisioning Server creates an installation session for the target machines based on the configured OS distribution settings.

6. Reboot the target machines.

As each target machine requests an IP address from the DHCP server and requests a PXE boot, OS Provisioning Server checks the machine's MAC address to determine if the machine has an installation session waiting on the OS Provisioning Server. If an installation session for the machine is found, the OS installer boots over TFTP, the OS distribution and VCM Agent are downloaded to the target machines using HTTP, and the distribution and Agent are installed on the target machines.

When the installation completes, the new physical or virtual machines appear in the Provisioned Machines data grid. They are licensed or available to license in VCM. If the machine is not licensed, you must license it to manage the machine. As each machine is licensed, you manage it in VCM as a Window or Linux machine.

Configure Operating System Provisioning Servers

Add OS Provisioning Server instances to VCM so that you can use VCM to submit the install operating system actions to the OS Provisioning Server. It is the OS Provisioning Server instances that install the imported operating systems on the target physical or virtual machines.

Prerequisites

- Install the OS Provisioning Server and import the OS distributions. See the *VCM Installation Guide*.
- Install the VCMAgent.CMAgent.5.5.0.Linux on your OS Provisioning Server machines using HTTP communication protocol and port 26542, the default port. See ["Configuring Linux and UNIX Machines" on page 107](#).
- Collect the Machines - General data type from the OS Provisioning Server machine. See ["Collect UNIX/Linux Data" on page 116](#).

Procedure

1. ["Add Operating System Provisioning Servers" on page 160](#)

To register the OS Provisioning Servers, you must add the Red Hat servers that you configured as OS Provisioning Servers. When the servers are registered, you select the OS Provisioning Server from which to install operating systems when you are configuring the provisioning action.

2. ["Set the Trust Status for Operating System Provisioning Servers" on page 160](#)

You set the trusted status is on Agent machines where you verify that the connection is legitimate. When you set the trust status, you are marking the Agent certificate as trusted. When transmitting sensitive information, such as credentials, between the Collector and OS Provisioning Servers, the machines must be trusted.

3. ["Collect Operating System Distributions" on page 161](#)

Collect the OS Distributions to ensure that you have access to all the operating systems in the OS Provisioning Server repository.

4. ["Discover Provisionable Machines" on page 161](#)

The OS Provisioning Server identifies provisionable physical or virtual machines in your environment when the target machines are set to network boot and attempt to PXE boot.

5. ["Provision Machines with Operating System Distributions" on page 162](#)

The OS provisioning process installs one Windows or Linux operating system distribution on one or more physical or virtual machines using OS provisioning.

Continuous provisioned machine management is based on the latest data you collect from the OS Provisioning Server. See ["Provisioned Machines Results" on page 171](#).

Add Operating System Provisioning Servers

To register the OS Provisioning Servers, you must add the Red Hat servers that you configured as OS Provisioning Servers. When the servers are registered, you select the OS Provisioning Server from which to install operating systems when you are configuring the provisioning action.

Prerequisites

- Verify that you installed and configured your OS Provisioning Server instances. See the *VCM Installation Guide*.
- Ensure that the Red Hat servers that you configured as OS Provisioning Server are added and licensed in VCM. See ["Configuring Linux and UNIX Machines" on page 107](#).
- Ensure that you collected Machines - General data from your OS Provisioning Server instances. See ["Collect UNIX/Linux Data" on page 116](#).

Procedure

1. Click **Administration**.
2. Select **Machines Manager > OS Provisioning > Registered Servers**.
3. Click **Add**.
4. On the Select OSP Server page, move the selected servers to the lower pane and click **Next**.
5. Review the Confirmation information and click **Finish**.
6. Click **Refresh**, located on the main toolbar, to update the data grid.

What to do next

- Collect the available distributions from the target OS Provisioning Servers. See ["Collect Operating System Distributions" on page 161](#).

Set the Trust Status for Operating System Provisioning Servers

You set the trusted status is on Agent machines where you verify that the connection is legitimate. When you set the trust status, you are marking the Agent certificate as trusted. When transmitting sensitive information, such as credentials, between the Collector and OS Provisioning Servers, the machines must be trusted.

If you choose not to use this level of security, you can set the Allow sensitive parameters to be passed to agents not verified as Trusted option to Yes in the General Settings for the Collector data grid.

Prerequisites

Verify that your OS Provisioning Server instances are added as registered servers. See ["Add Operating System Provisioning Servers" on page 160](#)

Procedure

1. Click **Administration**.
2. Select **Certificates**.
3. Select the OS Provisioning Server machines and click **Change Trust Status**.
4. Add any additional OS Provisioning Server instances to trust to the lower data grid.
5. Select **Check to trust or uncheck to untrust the selected machines** and click **Next**.
6. Review the number of machines affected and click **Finish**.

What to do next

Collect OS distributions from your OS Provisioning Server instances. See ["Collect Operating System Distributions" on page 161](#).

Collect Operating System Distributions

Collect the OS Distributions to ensure that you have access to all the operating systems in the OS Provisioning Server repository. These OS Distributions are operating system images that are available to install on target machines.

Prerequisites

- Ensure that operating system distributions are imported into the OS Provisioning Server repository. To import OS distributions, see *See the VCM Installation Guide*.
- Verify that the OS Provisioning Integration Enabled setting is configured with a value greater than 0. Click **Administration** and select **Settings > OS Provisioning Settings > OS Provisioning Server**.

Procedure

1. Click **Administration**.
2. Select **Machines Manager > OS Provisioning > OS Distributions**.
3. Click **Refresh**.

This action collects data from the OS Provisioning Server. When the collection finishes, the available operating systems distributions appear in the data grid.

What to do next

Discover target machines. See ["Discover Provisionable Machines" on page 161](#).

Discover Provisionable Machines

The OS Provisioning Server identifies provisionable physical or virtual machines in your environment when the target machines are set to network boot and attempt to PXE boot.

Prerequisites

- Ensure that the target machines have a minimum of 1GB RAM and meet the minimum RAM requirements for the operating system you are installing.
- Configure the primary network interface on the target machines with a connection to the OS Provisioning Server deployment network. If you use a different network as the primary interface, the deployment process appears to start, but you receive communication errors and the process ultimately fails.

Procedure

1. On target machines, configure the BIOS to network boot.
2. Start the machines on your provisioning network.
3. In VCM, click **Administration**.
4. Select **Machines Manager > OS Provisioning > Provisionable Machines**.
5. On the data grid toolbar, click **Refresh**.

This action collects data from the OS Provisioning Server and the provisionable machines appear in the data grid when the collection is finished. The machines are identified by MAC address.

What to do next

Provision the target machine. See ["Provision Machines with Operating System Distributions" on page 162](#).

Provision Machines with Operating System Distributions

The OS provisioning process installs one Windows or Linux operating system distribution on one or more physical or virtual machines using OS provisioning.

Depending on the distribution you are installing, use one of the following procedures.

- ["Provision Windows Machines" on page 162](#)

Provisioning physical or virtual machines with a Windows operating system installs the selected operating system and the VCM Agent on one or more of your Windows machines.

- ["Provision Linux Machines" on page 165](#)

Provisioning physical or virtual machines with a Linux operating system installs the selected operating system and the VCM Agent on one or more of your Linux machines.

Provision Windows Machines

Provisioning physical or virtual machines with a Windows operating system installs the selected operating system and the VCM Agent on one or more of your Windows machines.

You can install one OS distribution on one or more target machines. To install a different OS distribution, configure a new OS provisioning action.

Select no more than ten machines per provisioning action.

Prerequisites

- Verify that the operating system you are installing is compatible with the hardware or configuration of the target physical or virtual machines. For example, the operating system must support the drivers required by the hardware.
- Verify that the OS Provisioning Servers are registered. See ["Add Operating System Provisioning Servers" on page 160](#).
- Verify that the OS distributions are collected and appear in the OS Distributions data grid. See ["Collect Operating System Distributions" on page 161](#).
- Verify that the target machines are discovered and appear in the Provisionable Machines data grid. See ["Discover Provisionable Machines" on page 161](#).

- Identify or create any postinstallation scripts that you want to run on the target machine after it is provisioned with the new operating system. The postinstallation scripts are copied to the target machine along with the OS distribution and runs after the operating system is installed.

Procedure

1. Click **Administration**.
2. Select **Machines Manager > OS Provisioning > Provisionable Machines**.
3. Select one or more target machines in the data grid on which you are installing the same OS distribution.
4. Click **Provision**.
5. On the Select OSP Server page, select the OS Provisioning Server that will manage the provisioning action and click **Next**.
6. On the Select Machines page, add or remove target machines from the selected machine list and click **Next**.

7. On the Select OS Distribution page, select the Windows operating system that you are installing on the selected machines and click **Next**.
8. On the Settings page, configure the options required for your selected Window OS distribution and click **Next**.

| Option | Description |
|----------------------------------|---|
| Product License Key | (Optional for Windows 2008. Required for Windows 2003 and Windows 7.) Type a license matching the operating system you are installing. |
| License Key Type | (Required for Windows 2003 and Windows 7, and for Windows 2008 if Product License Key is provided.) Select the license type, either Retail or MAK (multiple activation key). |
| Admin Password | (Required) Type the password for the target machines' local Administrator account. |
| Re-enter Admin Password | (Required) Retype the password. |
| Domain or Workgroup | (Required) If a Domain and Domain User are specified, Domain details are used. If the domain details are not provided, then the Workgroup is used. |
| Add machine(s) to a Domain | Select the check box to add the machines to a Domain rather than a Workgroup. If you select this option, you must configure the domain details. The domain controller must be accessible to the deployed machine during the provisioning process. |
| Domain Type | Available if you select Add machine(s) to a Domain. Select the type in the drop-down menu. |
| Domain User | Available if you select Add machine(s) to a Domain. Type a user name. |
| Domain User Password | Available if you select Add machine(s) to a Domain. Type a password for the specified Domain User. |
| Re-enter Domain User Password | Available if you select Add machine(s) to a Domain. Retype the password. |
| Organization | Name of the licensing organization. |
| Windows SKU | (Window 2008 and Windows 7 only) Select the value in the drop-down list. See the online help for possible values. |
| Use DHCP to determine IP address | Use your designated DHCP to assign IP address, subnet, default gateway, and DNS. If not selected, you must manually add the information on the Machine-Specific Settings page. |

| Option | Description |
|--------------------------------|--|
| License these machines for VCM | License the machines for VCM management. |

9. On the Machine-Specific Settings page, type the **HostName** and click **Next**.

The HostName is limited to 15 characters.

If you did not select **Use DHCP to determine IP address** on the Settings page, you must configure the IP Address, Subnet, Default Gateway, and DNS.

10. (Optional) On the Post-install Script page, type a **Script Name** and the script, and click **Next**.
11. (Optional) On the Disk Configuration page, select one of the options and click **Next**.

| Option | Description |
|-------------------------------------|--|
| Use all available disk space | Creates and formats a single partition using all the available disk space. |
| Create partition with <i>nn</i> GB. | Partitions and formats the specified space. The space you specify must be less than the total available space. |

12. On the Confirmation page, click **Finish**.

The OS Provisioning Server starts jobs for each of the selected target machines. Each job creates a configured session for the specified machines. The configured session includes information about the target machine, the OS distribution, the configuration information for the selected combination of target machine and operating system, and the VCM Agent.

13. Reboot the target machines.

You must cycle the power on the machines either manually or using a remote administration mechanism. The machines must be configured to network boot from the OS Provisioning Server, which identifies the configured session that is waiting and the installation begins. If the session does not exist, then the target machine remains provisionable and is not provisioned until a session is created and the target machine is rebooted.

What to do next

- Verify that the provisioning process has begun. Click **Administration** and select **Machines Manager > OS Provisioning > Provisionable Machines**. The machines appear in the appropriate Available Machines or Licensed Machines data grid with an OS provisioning status of OS Provisioning Queued.
- Verify that the provisioning process is finished. Click **Administration** and select **Machines Manager > OS Provisioning > Provisioned Machines**. The OS provisioning status is OS Provisioning Succeeded or OS Provisioning Overwritten.
- Configure the Windows 2008 SP2, and R2, and Windows 7 machines on a public network with access to the Internet and manually complete the Windows license activation on the provisioned machines.
- (Optional) Change the Agent communication protocol. See ["Change Agent Communication" on page 171](#).

Provision Linux Machines

Provisioning physical or virtual machines with a Linux operating system installs the selected operating system and the VCM Agent on one or more of your Linux machines.

You can install one OS distribution on one or more target machines. To install a different OS distribution, configure a new OS provisioning action.

Prerequisites

- Verify that the operating system you are installing is compatible with the hardware or configuration of the target physical or virtual machines. For example, the operating system must support the drivers required by the hardware.
- Verify that the OS Provisioning Servers are registered. See ["Add Operating System Provisioning Servers" on page 160](#).
- Verify that the OS distributions are collected and appear in the OS Distributions data grid. See ["Collect Operating System Distributions" on page 161](#).
- Verify that the target machines are discovered and appear in the Provisionable Machines data grid. See ["Discover Provisionable Machines" on page 161](#).
- Identify or create any postinstallation scripts that you want to run on the target machine after it is provisioned with the new operating system. The postinstallation scripts are copied to the target machine along with the OS distribution and runs after the operating system is installed.

Procedure

1. Click **Administration**.
2. Select **Machines Manager > OS Provisioning > Provisionable Machines**.
3. Select one or more target machines in the data grid on which you are installing the same OS distribution.
4. Click **Provision**.
5. On the Select OSP Server page, select the OS Provisioning Server that will manage the provisioning action and click **Next**.
6. On the Select Machines page, add or remove target machines from the selected machine list and click **Next**.

7. On the Select OS Distribution page, select the a Linux operating system that you are installing on the selected machines and click **Next**.
8. On the Settings page, configure the options required for your selected Linux OS distribution and click **Next**.

| Option | Description |
|---|--|
| Product License Key | Type the license to use when installing the operating system on the target machines. The license must match the operating system you are installing. |
| Root Password | (Required) Type the password you are assigning to the local root. |
| Re-enter Root Password | (Required) Retype the password. |
| Domain | (Required) Type the domain to which you are assigning the machines. |
| Use DHCP to determine IP address | Use your designated DHCP to assign IP address, subnet, default gateway, and DNS. If this option is not selected, you must manually enter the information on the Machine-Specific Settings page. |
| License these machines for VCM after deployment | License the target machines for VCM management. |

9. On the Machine-Specific Settings page, type the **HostName** and click **Next**.

The HostName is limited to 32 characters.

If you did not select **Use DHCP to determine IP address** on the Settings page, you must configure the IP Address, Subnet, Default Gateway, and DNS.

10. (Optional) On the Post-Install Script page, type a **Script Name**, the script, and click **Next**.

Post-install scripts are copied to the machine when the OS distribution is copied and runs after the operating system is installed.

11. (Optional) On the Disk Configuration page, configure the options and click **Next**.

You can either install the operating system without partitioning the disk, or you can create partitions and specify the size.

| Option | Description |
|--------------------|---|
| Custom Volume Plan | Select the check box to partition the disk. |
| Mount Point | Type the location of the mount point for the partition. For example, /, /boot, /usr, /var/log. You use the first partition for the operating system and then specify a second mount point for user home directories. The mount points value must meet the specific criteria. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ / and /boot are required mount points. |

| Option | Description |
|-------------|---|
| Volume Name | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Duplicate mount points are not allowed. ■ For a swap partition, the mount point and the file system type should be swap. ■ When naming mount points, you can use letters, digits, ., -, _ and +. Spaces are not allowed. <hr/> <p>Type the name of the logical partition. For example, LogVol00.</p> <p>The volume names must meet specific criteria.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ When naming volumes, you can use letters, digits, ., or _. Spaces are not allowed. ■ The name limit 16 characters. ■ If you assign a volume name, you must assign a volume group name. ■ If you assign more than one volume name in a volume group, you cannot use the same name for each volume name. |
| Volume Size | <p>The the size of the partition in megabytes or gigabytes. For example, 10MB or 1GB.</p> <p>If you select Grow partition to use all remaining space, you can specify a value of 0MB. If Grow is not selected, you must specify a valid partition size.</p> |

| Option | Description | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|-------------------------|--|------------------|------------------------------|------------------------------|-------------------------------------|---|-------------------------------------|----------|-----------------------------------|------|------------------|------------------|-----------------------|------------------|------------------------------|------|------------|------------------|------------------|------------------|------------------------|------|------------|------------|------------|--------------------|------------------------------------|------|------------------------------|------------------------------|------------------------------|
| File System | <p>Select the type of file system.</p> <p>For a swap partition, the mount point and the file system type should be swap.</p> <p>Supported File System options by operating system.</p> | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Operating System</th> <th>Supported File System</th> <th>swap</th> <th>/boot</th> <th>/</th> <th>/home, /tmp, /usr, /var, /usr/local</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>RHEL 6.0</td> <td>ext2, ext3, ext4, swap, vfat, xfs</td> <td>swap</td> <td>ext2, ext3, ext4</td> <td>ext2, ext3, ext4</td> <td>ext2, ext3, ext4, xfs</td> </tr> <tr> <td>RHEL 5.4 and 5.5</td> <td>ext2, ext3, ext4, swap, vfat</td> <td>swap</td> <td>ext2, ext3</td> <td>ext2, ext3, ext4</td> <td>ext2, ext3, ext4</td> </tr> <tr> <td>RHEL 5.0 and 5.2</td> <td>ext2, ext3, swap, vfat</td> <td>swap</td> <td>ext2, ext3</td> <td>ext2, ext3</td> <td>ext2, ext3</td> </tr> <tr> <td>SLES 10.0 and 11.1</td> <td>reiser, ext2, ext3, xfs, jfs, swap</td> <td>swap</td> <td>reiser, ext2, ext3, xfs, jfs</td> <td>reiser, ext2, ext3, xfs, jfs</td> <td>reiser, ext2, ext3, xfs, jfs</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> | Operating System | Supported File System | swap | /boot | / | /home, /tmp, /usr, /var, /usr/local | RHEL 6.0 | ext2, ext3, ext4, swap, vfat, xfs | swap | ext2, ext3, ext4 | ext2, ext3, ext4 | ext2, ext3, ext4, xfs | RHEL 5.4 and 5.5 | ext2, ext3, ext4, swap, vfat | swap | ext2, ext3 | ext2, ext3, ext4 | ext2, ext3, ext4 | RHEL 5.0 and 5.2 | ext2, ext3, swap, vfat | swap | ext2, ext3 | ext2, ext3 | ext2, ext3 | SLES 10.0 and 11.1 | reiser, ext2, ext3, xfs, jfs, swap | swap | reiser, ext2, ext3, xfs, jfs | reiser, ext2, ext3, xfs, jfs | reiser, ext2, ext3, xfs, jfs |
| Operating System | Supported File System | swap | /boot | / | /home, /tmp, /usr, /var, /usr/local | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| RHEL 6.0 | ext2, ext3, ext4, swap, vfat, xfs | swap | ext2, ext3, ext4 | ext2, ext3, ext4 | ext2, ext3, ext4, xfs | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| RHEL 5.4 and 5.5 | ext2, ext3, ext4, swap, vfat | swap | ext2, ext3 | ext2, ext3, ext4 | ext2, ext3, ext4 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| RHEL 5.0 and 5.2 | ext2, ext3, swap, vfat | swap | ext2, ext3 | ext2, ext3 | ext2, ext3 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| SLES 10.0 and 11.1 | reiser, ext2, ext3, xfs, jfs, swap | swap | reiser, ext2, ext3, xfs, jfs | reiser, ext2, ext3, xfs, jfs | reiser, ext2, ext3, xfs, jfs | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Volume Group Name | <p>Type the name of the logical group.</p> <p>For example, VolGroup00. You can specify only one volume group on the target machines. You may add volume groups after the OS distribution is installed.</p> <p>The volume names must meet specific criteria.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ When naming volumes, you can use letters, digits, ., or _. Spaces are not allowed. ■ The name limit 16 characters. ■ If you assign a volume name, you must assign a volume group name. ■ (SLES only) You can assign only one volume group when partitioning the disk. ■ (RHEL 5.x and 6.0, and SLES 10.3 and 11.1 only) You cannot use /boot as part of the volume group name. | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Add | Click to add the configuration data to the Custom Volume Plan list. | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Custom Volume Plan list | Displays the disk configuration data. | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |

| Option | Description |
|---|---|
| Grow partition to use all remaining space | Select the option to allow the logical volume to fill available space up to the maximum size specified for the volume. You can select the option for only one partition. If you select this option, you can specify a Volume Size of 0MB. |
| Remove | Click to delete the selected row from the custom volume plan list. |

- On the Confirmation page, click **Finish**.

The OS Provisioning Server starts jobs for each of the selected target machines. Each job creates a configured session for the specified machines. The configured session includes information about the target machine, the OS distribution, the configuration information for the selected combination of target machine and operating system, and the VCM Agent.

- Reboot the target machines.

You must cycle the power on the machines either manually or using a remote administration mechanism. The machines must be configured to network boot from the OS Provisioning Server, which identifies the configured session that is waiting and the installation begins. If the session does not exist, then the target machine remains provisionable and is not provisioned until a session is created and the target machine is rebooted.

What to do next

- Verify that the provisioning process has begun. Click **Administration** and select **Machines Manager > OS Provisioning > Provisionable Machines**. The machines appear in the appropriate Available Machines or Licensed Machines data grid with an OS provisioning status of OS Provisioning Queued.
- Verify that the provisioning process is finished. Click **Administration** and select **Machines Manager > OS Provisioning > Provisioned Machines**. The OS provisioning status is OS Provisioning Succeeded or OS Provisioning Overwritten.
- Move the Linux machine to your production network and synchronize the network time. See ["Synchronize Time on Installed Linux Operating Systems" on page 170](#).
- (Optional) Change the Agent communication protocol. See ["Change Agent Communication" on page 171](#).

Synchronize Time on Installed Linux Operating Systems

When Linux machines are provisioned with an operating system, the Network Time Protocol (NTP) service is not running. After moving the newly provisioned Linux machines to a network with access to the NTP server, you must synchronize the time on the machines to network time.

Prerequisites

- Configure the Linux machines on a network with access to the NTP server.
- Identify the NTP servers used in your environment.

Procedure

1. On the Linux machine, log in as `root`.
2. Run the `ntpdate -u <ntpserver>` command to update the machine clock.
For example, `ntpdate -u ntp-time.for.mydomain`.
3. Open the `/etc/ntp.conf` file and add the NTP servers used in your environment.
You can add multiple NTP servers similar to these examples.

```
server ntp-time.for.mydomain
server otherntp.server.org
server ntp.research.gov
```
4. Run the `service ntpd start` command to start the NTP service and implement your configuration changes.

Change Agent Communication

The VCM Agent is installed by the OS Provisioning Server with default settings. After the operating system distribution is installed, you can change the communication setting or install a new Agent.

Prerequisites

Install Windows or Linux operating system distribution. See ["Provision Windows Machines" on page 162](#) or ["Provision Linux Machines" on page 165](#).

Procedure

1. Configure the communication settings for the machines on which you installed one of the following operating systems using OS provisioning.
 - The Windows Agent is installed with DCOM as the communication protocol. To change the protocol, click **Administration** and then select **Machines Manager > Licensed Machines > Licensed Windows Machines > Change Protocol**.
 - The Linux Agents are installed with `inetd` or `xinetd`, as appropriate, with a default communication port of 26542. To change any Agent settings, uninstall the Agent from the machine, and reinstall it with the settings you require. See ["Install the Agent on UNIX/Linux Machines" on page 109](#).

Provisioned Machines Results

Review the OS provisioning data that is specific to the provisioning process.

After you provision the target machines, VCM manages them as Windows or Linux machines. As managed machines, you collect data, add software, run patching assessments, and apply rules to maintain machine compliance in your environment.

The displayed data is only as current as the last time you collected from the OS Provisioning Server.

| Option | Description |
|----------------|---|
| Administration | <p>View administrative details about the OS Provisioning Server.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ To view all provisioned machines, click Administration and select Machines Manager > OS Provisioning > Provisioned Machines. ■ To view the provisioned Windows machines, click Administration and select Machines Manager > Licensed |

| Option | Description |
|--------|---|
| | <p>Machines > Licensed Windows Machines. The OS Provisioning Status column indicates whether the Windows machine was create using OS provisioning.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ To view the provisioned Linux machines, click Administration and select Machines Manager > Licensed Machines > Licensed UNIX Machines. The OS Provisioning Status column indicates whether the Linux machine was create using OS provisioning. |

Reprovision Machines

You can reprovision Windows or Linux machines where the operating system was installed using the OS Provisioning Server and VCM.

When machines are reprovisioned, you may change the machine name.



CAUTION Reprovisioning overwrites the existing disk with a new operating system. All existing data is lost.

Prerequisites

- Verify that the machine to be reprovisioned is listed in the Provisioned Machines data grid. Select **Administration** and click **Machines Manager > OS Provisioning > Provisioned Machines.**
- Review the provisioning process for the OS distribution you are installing. See ["Provision Machines with Operating System Distributions" on page 162.](#)
- On the target machine, set the BIOS to network boot.

Procedure

1. Click **Administration.**
2. Select **Machines Manager > OS Provisioning > Provisioned Machines.**
3. Select the machines.
4. Click **Re-provision.**
5. On the Select OSP Server page, select the OS Provisioning Server that will manage the provisioning action and click **Next.**
6. On the **Select Machines** page, add or remove machines and click **Next.**
7. On the **Select OS Distribution** page, select the operating system you are installing on the selected machines and click **Next.**
8. Continue with the provisioning wizard.

The wizard options vary depending on the OS distribution you are installing.

9. When you are certain that the selected machines are those you want to reprovision, select the **Proceed with re-provisioning of the operating system on the selected machines** check box.
10. Click **Finish.**

The OS Provisioning Server starts jobs for each of the selected machines. Each job creates a configured session for the specified machines. The configured session includes information about the target machine, the OS distribution, the user configuration information for the selected combination of machine and operating system, and the VCM Agent.

11. Reboot the target machines.

You must cycle the power on the machines either manually or using some remote administration mechanism. The machines must be configured to network boot from the provisioning network. If a session is waiting on the OS Provisioning Server, the installation begins. If the session does not exist, then the machine remains provisioned and will not be re-provisioned until the session is created.

What to do next

- Verify that the provisioning process has begun. Click **Administration** and select **Machines Manager > OS Provisioning > Provisionable Machines**. The machines appear in the appropriate Available Machines or Licensed Machines data grid with an OS provisioning status of OS Provisioning Queued.
- Verify that the provisioning process is finished. Click **Administration** and select **Machines Manager > OS Provisioning > Provisioned Machines**. The OS provisioning status is OS Provisioning Succeeded or OS Provisioning Overwritten.
- Configure the Windows 2008 SP2, and R2, and Windows 7 machines on a public network with access to the Internet and manually complete the Windows license activation on the provisioned machines.
- (Optional) Change the Agent communication protocol. See ["Change Agent Communication" on page 171](#).

Provisioning Software on Managed Machines

13

Software provisioning is the process you use to create software packages, publish the packages to repositories, and then install packages on one or more target machines.

To support the provisioning process, the VCM Software Provisioning components consist of VMware vCenter Configuration Manager Package Studio, software package repositories, and Package Manager.

For more information about software provisioning, see VCM online Help, the *VCM Software Provisioning Components Installation and User's Guide*, and the Package Studio online Help.

Using Package Studio to Create Software Packages and Publish to Repositories

Package Studio is the application used to build software packages for installation on target Windows servers and workstations.

Windows packages can include in-house and commercial software installation files, including .msi, .exe, VBScripts, python, PowerShell.

To add a software installer to a package, it must be able to install and uninstall unattended or quietly using command line options, response files, or other similar methods.

Software Repository for Windows

Software Repository for Windows is the shared location to which packages are published by Package Studio and the location from which Package Manager downloads packages for installation.

Package Manager for Windows

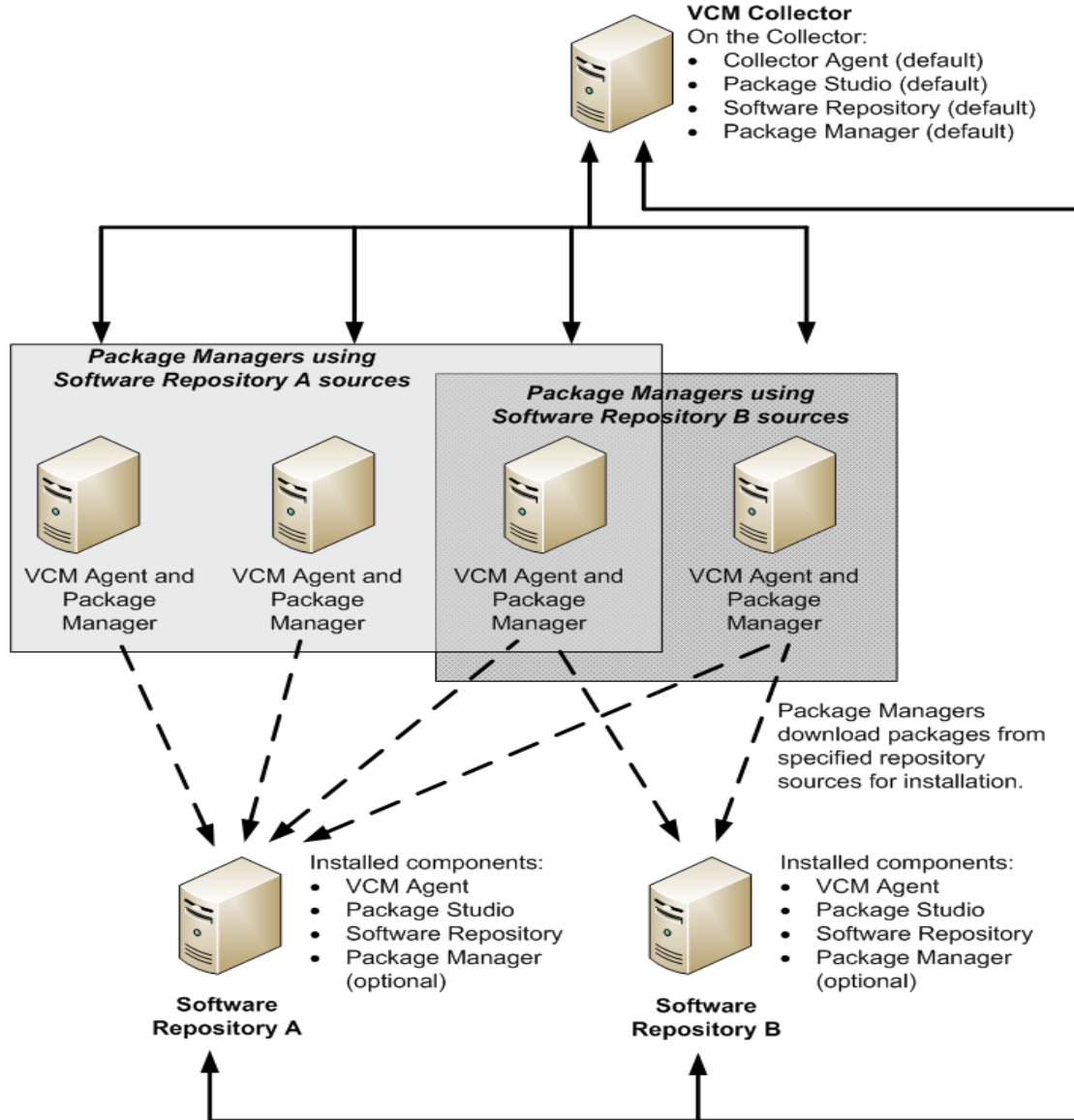
Package Manager is the application installed on each machine to manage the installation and removal of the software contained in packages. Package Manager is configured to use one or more repositories as sources for packages.

If you are using the software provisioning components in conjunction with VMware vCenter Configuration Manager (VCM), you can use VCM to add and remove sources, and to install and remove packages.

Software Provisioning Component Relationships

The following diagram displays the general relationship between Package Studio, repositories, and Package Manager in a working environment.

Figure 13–1. Software Provisioning Diagram



Install the Software Provisioning Components

The software provisioning components are installed on the VCM Collector by default. VMware recommends that you install the Software Repository for Windows and the VMware vCenter Configuration Manager Package Studio on a machine other than the Collector.

The software provisioning components should be installed on machines with these relationships:

- **Software Repository for Windows:** Installed on at least one Windows machine in your environment, and installed on the same machine with Package Studio. Install the repository before installing Package Studio.
- **VMware vCenter Configuration Manager Package Studio:** Installed on the same machine as your software repository.
- **Package Manager:** Installed on all Windows machines on which you are managing software provisioning.

To uninstall the applications using a script at a later date, you should save a copy of each of the .msi files in an archive location. To uninstall using the .msi, you must have the same version used to install the application.

Procedure

1. ["Install Software Repository for Windows" on page 177](#)

The Software Repository for Windows and the VMware vCenter Configuration Manager Package Studio should be installed on the same machine. Installing the repository installs the Repository folders and subfolders, and configures the virtual directory. The virtual directory is used by Package Manager to access the repository.

2. ["Install Package Studio" on page 178](#)

You must install the VMware vCenter Configuration Manager Package Studio and the repository on the same machine. The process installs the application files and specifies the repository to which Package Studio will publish packages.

3. ["Install Package Manager on Managed Machines" on page 180](#)

The Package Manager, which installed on the target machines, manages the installation of the software packages. It does not contain the software packages, only pointers to the packages in the repository sources of which it is aware.

Install Software Repository for Windows

The Software Repository for Windows and the VMware vCenter Configuration Manager Package Studio should be installed on the same machine. Installing the repository installs the Repository folders and subfolders, and configures the virtual directory. The virtual directory is used by Package Manager to access the repository.

Prerequisites

- Verify that the target machine meets the supported hardware, operating system, and software requirements. See *VCM Installation Guide* for currently supported platforms and requirements.
- Ensure that you have access to the `Repository.msi`, which is available on the VMware Web site or in the vCenter Configuration Manager application files. The default location in the VCM application files is `C:\Program Files (x86)\VMware\VCM\AgentFiles\Products`.

Procedure

1. Double-click `Repository.msi`.
2. On the Welcome page, click **Next**.
3. Review the license agreement, select the appropriate options to continue, and click **Next**.
4. On the Installation Folder page, use the default path or click **Change** to modify the path, and click **Next**.
5. On the Virtual Directory page, use the default name or type a new name in the text box, and click **Next**.
6. On the Ready to Install page, click **Install**.
7. When the Setup Completes page appears, click **Finish**.

The repository and the virtual directory are added to the locations specified during installation. The default location for the repository is `C:\Program Files\VMware\VCM\Tools\Repository` (on 32-bit machines) or `C:\Program Files (x86)\VMware\VCM\Tools\Repository` (on 64-bit machines). The default virtual directory SoftwareRepository is added to **Internet Information Services (IIS) > Web Sites > Default Web Site**.

Manually Uninstall the Repository

Using the command line syntax, you can run an unattended uninstall the software repository.

Prerequisites

To uninstall the application, use the same version of the `Repository.msi` that was used to install the application.

Procedure

1. Copy the `Repository.msi` to the machine on which you are uninstalling the application or point to the file in a shared directory.
2. Run the `.msi` file using the following command line syntax:

```
msiexec /x [path]\Repository.msi /l*v %temp%\Repository.log
```

Install Package Studio

You must install the VMware vCenter Configuration Manager Package Studio and the repository on the same machine. The process installs the application files and specifies the repository to which Package Studio will publish packages.

Prerequisites

- Verify that the target machine meets the supported hardware, operating system, and software requirements. See *VCM Installation Guide* for currently supported platforms and requirements.
- Ensure you have access to the `PackageStudio.msi`, which is available on the VMware Web site or in the vCenter Configuration Manager application files. The default location in the VCM application files is `C:\Program Files (x86)\VMware\VCM\AgentFiles\Products`.
- Verify that the Software Repository for Windows is installed. Installing the repository before installing Package Studio reduces the manual configuration steps.

Procedure

1. Double-click `PackageStudio.msi`.
2. On the Welcome page, click **Next**.
3. Review the license agreement, select the appropriate options to continue, and click **Next**.
4. On the Installation Folder page, use the default path or click **Change** to modify the path, and click **Next**.
5. On the Repository Root Folder page, verify the path is to your installed repository files.
If the path is not accurate, click **Change**. When the path is correct, click **Next**.
6. On the Ready to Install page, click **Install**.
7. On the Setup Complete page, click **Finish**.

The Package Studio is installed to the location specified during installation. The default location is `C:\Program Files\VMware\VCM\Tools\Package Studio` (on 32-bit machines) or `C:\Program Files (x86)\VMware\VCM\Tools\Package Studio` (on 64-bit machines).

To start Package Studio, click **Start** and select **All Programs > VMware vCenter Configuration Manager > Tools > Package Studio**, or open the Package Studio folder and double-click `PackageStudio.exe`.

Install Package Studio Using Unattended .MSI

The manual installation process installs the application files and specifies the repository to which Package Studio will publish packages.

Prerequisites

- Verify that the target machine meets the supported hardware, operating system, and software requirements. See *VCM Installation Guide* for currently supported platforms and requirements.
- Ensure you have access to the `PackageStudio.msi`, which is available on the VMware Web site or in the vCenter Configuration Manager application files. The default location in the VCM application files is `C:\Program Files (x86)\VMware\VCM\AgentFiles\Products`.
- Verify that the Software Repository for Windows is installed. Installing the repository before installing Package Studio reduces the manual configuration steps.

Procedure

1. On your Collector, go to `C:\Program Files (x86)\VMware\VCM\AgentFiles\Products`.
2. Locate the `PackageStudio.msi` file and copy it to the target machine or a share location.
3. On the target machine, run the .msi file using the following command line syntax.

```
msiexec /i [path]\PackageStudio.msi /qn /l*v %temp%\PackageStudio.log
```

You can add the following arguments if you want to specify locations other than the default directories:

```
REPOSITORY_ROOT=C:\Program Files (x86)\VMware\VCM\Tools\Repository\ (Defaults to this or uses the Repository's value if it is already installed)
```

```
PACKAGESTUDIO_DIR="C:\Program Files (x86)\VMware\VCM\Tools\Package Studio\" (defaults to this path)
```

The Package Studio is installed to the location specified during installation. The default location is `C:\Program Files\VMware\VCM\Tools\Package Studio` (on 32-bit machines) or `C:\Program Files (x86)\VMware\VCM\Tools\Package Studio` (on 64-bit machines).

To start Package Studio, click **Start** and select **All Programs > VMware vCenter Configuration Manager > Tools > Package Studio**, or open the Package Studio folder and double-click **PackageStudio.exe**.

Manually Uninstall Package Studio

Use the following script to run an unattended uninstall the Package Manager.

Prerequisites

- To uninstall the application, you must use the version of the `PackageStudio.msi` that was used to install the application.

Procedure

1. Copy the `PackageStudio.msi` to the machine on which you are uninstalling the application or a shared location.
2. Run the installation file using the following command line syntax:

```
msiexec /x [path]\PackageStudio.msi /l*v %temp%\PackageStudio.log
```

When Package Studio is uninstalled from a machine, the locally saved projects and `.crate` files remain on the machine, allowing you to copy them to another machine or to delete them manually if they are not needed.

Install Package Manager on Managed Machines

The Package Manager, which installed on the target machines, manages the installation of the software packages. It does not contain the software packages, only pointers to the packages in the repository sources of which it is aware. When directed to install, the package is copied from the repository to the `cratecache` folder on the target machines. Package Manager unzips the files to the `%TMP%` directory and runs the configured installation.

The Package Manager is installed on target machines when the 5.3 VCM Agent or later is installed from the Collector.

When a Remove Package action is sent to Package Manager, it checks first for the package in the `cratecache`. If it is not found, it then checks the repository sources for the package, and again copies it to the target machine's `cratecache` folder where it unzips the files. The configured uninstall files may be run from the zip directory.

Installing the VCM Agent

If you are preparing to use software provisioning on machines not previously managed in VCM, you must first install the VCM Agent. See ["Install the VCM Windows Agent on Your Windows Machines" on page 77](#) for complete instructions. When you install the VCM Agent from the Collector, the installation includes the agent extensions for provisioning and the Package Manager for Windows. If you manually install the Agent using the MSI or EXE, you must manually install the Package Manager and the necessary agent extensions. See [Manually Install the and Provisioning Agent Extensions](#).

This default action is based on the settings in **Administration > Settings > General Settings > Installer**.

Prerequisites

- Verify that the target machine meets the supported hardware, operating system, and software requirements. See *VCM Installation Guide* for currently supported platforms and requirements.

Verifying the Installation of the Agent Extensions for Provisioning

If you do not know whether the machines are ready to use provisioning, you can verify the version of the Agent Extensions for Provisioning. The Agent Extensions for Provisioning include the Package Manager.

1. Select **Administration > Machines Manager > Licensed Machines > Licensed Windows Machines**.
2. In the data grid, locate the machines on which you are verifying the existence of the necessary Agent Extensions and verify that the Agent Ext. For Prov. Version column contains a value of 5.3 or later.

If it does not, you need to either install or upgrade the VCM Agent.

Upgrading the VCM Agent

If an earlier VCM Agent is installed on your machines, you will need to upgrade to the latest Agent. See Upgrade Agent in the online Help.

Using Package Studio to Create Software Packages and Publish to Repositories

Package Studio is the application used to build software packages for installation on target Windows servers and workstations.

Windows packages can include in-house and commercial software installation files, including .msi, .exe, VBScripts, python, PowerShell.

To add a software installer to a package, it must be able to install and uninstall unattended or quietly using command line options, response files, or other similar methods.

Creating Packages

You use Package Studio to create packages, including the installation files and the required metadata. When the package is ready for use, you publish it to a repository. The procedure here is only a general process. See the Package Studio online Help or the *VCM Software Provisioning Installation and User's Guide* for the detailed procedures.

Procedure

1. Start the VMware vCenter Configuration Manager Package Studio. Select **Start > All Programs All > VMware vCenter Configuration Manager > Tools > Package Studio**.

NOTE If you are running Package Studio on the Collector or a Windows 2008 Server, you must run the application as administrator. See ["Run Package Studio as Administrator" on page 182](#) for more information.

2. Click **Manage Packages**. Configure the package contents based on the options on the following tabs:

- a. Click **Properties** and type a Name, Version, Description, and select the Architecture. These fields are required. You have the option to update the other fields, depending on your requirements.
Configuring the package with Depends, Conflicts, Provides, and adding and configuring the installation and removal files.
 - b. Click **Files** and import the installation files, add pre-command files, configure the commands and arguments, and add post-command files.
 - c. Click **Save** to save the setting and files as a Project (*.prj).
 - d. Click **Generate** to save the project as a package (*.crate).
3. Click **Package Signing** and sign the package with a signing certificate.
 - a. Click **Open** to select a package (*.crate file).
 - b. Click **Sign** and select a certificate from the certificate store or from a file.
4. Click **Manage Repositories** and select the platforms and sections to which you are publishing the package.
 - a. Click **Add Platforms** to add a platform.
 - b. Select a platform, and then click **Add Sections**.
 - c. Select a section, and then click **Publish Package**.
 - d. Select the package (.crate) and click **Open**.
 - e. (Optional) Select additional platforms and sections to which to publish the package.
 - f. Click **Publish**. The package is published to the software repository.
 5. Click **External Software** and add externally managed software, especially any packages specified as depends or conflicts in any of your packages.
 - a. Click **New External Package** and replace the text with the name you will use as an external software package name.
 - b. Type a version number in the Version text box.
 - c. Select the **Architecture** in the drop-down menu.
 - d. Click **Select Attribute Name** and select a registry property or WMI attribute in the drop-down menu.
 - e. Add attributes.
 - f. To save a copy locally, click **Save**.
 - g. Click **Publish External SW** to publish to the repository.

Run Package Studio as Administrator

The enhanced security on Windows 2008 Server requires you to run Package Studio as an administrator. If you do not, you will not be able to publish packages to the repository.

NOTE You do not need to run Package Studio as administrator if your repositories were configured on non-UAC protected paths or when you are running Package Studio and the repositories on machines other than a Windows 2008 Server.

Procedure

1. On a Windows 2008 machines, select **Start > All Programs > VMware vCenter Configuration Manager > Tools**.
2. Right-click **Package Studio** and select **Properties**.
3. Click the **Compatibility** tab.
4. In the Privilege Level area, select **Run this program as an administrator** and click **Apply**.
5. Click **OK**.
6. Select **Start > All Programs > VMware vCenter Configuration Manager > Tools > Package Studio**.
7. On the User Account Control dialog box, click **Yes**.

Using VCM Software Provisioning for Windows

Using VCM Software Provisioning, you collect and view Repository and Package Manager data, and then install or remove packages on target machines.

Prerequisites

Software packages are created and published to the repository. See ["Creating Packages" on page 181](#).

Procedure

1. ["Collect Package Manager Information from Machines" on page 183](#)
To view information about packages and Package Managers in VCM, you must collect Package Manager data from managed machines.
2. ["Collect Software Repository Data" on page 184](#)
Collect the repository data to identify which software packages are in which repositories. From the collected information, you can determine which repositories to assign to machines based on the available packages.
3. ["Add Repository Sources to Package Managers" on page 185](#)
Sources are the sections in the repository from which the Package Manager will be able to download and install packages.
4. ["Install Packages" on page 186](#)
The process of installing packages includes identifying and processing dependencies and conflicts; running any specified prescripts; running the installation using any specified command arguments; and running any specified post-scripts.

Collect Package Manager Information from Machines

To view information about packages and Package Managers in VCM, you must collect Package Manager data from managed machines.

Regularly collect Package Manager data to determine if your machines are remaining current with the necessary software packages.

Prerequisites

- Package Manager is installed on the target machines. Package Manager is installed when you install the VCM 5.3 Agent or later. See ["Install Package Manager on Managed Machines" on page 180](#).
- Verify that you created software provisioning packages using VMware vCenter Configuration Manager Package Studio and published the packages to the repositories. See ["Creating Packages" on page 181](#).

Procedure

1. Click **Collect**.
2. Select **Machine Data**.
3. Click **OK**.
4. On the **Machines** page, verify that the **Selected** pane displays all the machines from which you are collecting package manager data and click **Next**.
5. On the **Data Types** page, expand **Windows**, select **Software Provisioning - Package Managers**, and click **Next**.
6. On the **Confirmation** page, review the information, resolve any conflicts, and click **Finish**.

You can monitor the process in the **Jobs Manager**. See ["Viewing Provisioning Jobs in the Job Manager" on page 188](#).

What to do next

- When the collection is finished, view the collected data. Click **Console** and select **Windows tab > Operating System > Software Provisioning > Package Managers**. The data grid displays the packages and their current status.
- Collect repository data from the Software Repository for Windows. See ["Collect Software Repository Data" on page 184](#).

Collect Software Repository Data

Collect the repository data to identify which software packages are in which repositories. From the collected information, you can determine which repositories to assign to machines based on the available packages.

To better manage your repository machines, create a machine group containing all the machines on which the software repository is installed.

Prerequisites

Verify that you created software provisioning packages using VMware vCenter Configuration Manager Package Studio and published the packages to the repositories. See ["Creating Packages" on page 181](#).

Procedure

1. Click **Collect**.
2. Select **Machine Data**.
3. Click **OK**.
4. On the **Machines** page, verify that the **Selected** pane displays all the machines from which you are collecting repository data and click **Next**.
5. On the **Data Types** page, expand **Windows**, and select **Software Provisioning - Repositories**, and click **Next**.

6. On the Confirmation page, review the information, resolve any conflicts, and click **Finish**.

You can monitor the process in the **Jobs Manager**. See ["Viewing Provisioning Jobs in the Job Manager" on page 188](#).

What to do next

- When the collection is finished, view the collected data. Click **Console** and select **Windows tab > Operating System > Software Provisioning > Repositories**. The data grid displays the packages in the repositories.
- Add the repositories to the Package Manager. See ["Add Repository Sources to Package Managers" on page 185](#).

Add Repository Sources to Package Managers

Sources are the sections in the repository from which the Package Manager will be able to download and install packages.

Adding a source gives the Package Manager on the selected machines access to the packages available in specified section. The sources are numbered in priority order. When you add a new one, you can specify whether to add it to the beginning or to the end of the list. You can also remove sources.

Prerequisites

- Verify that you collected Package Manager data from the target machines. See ["Collect Package Manager Information from Machines" on page 183](#).
- Verify that you collected repository data from software repository. See ["Collect Software Repository Data" on page 184](#)

Procedure

1. Click **Console**.
2. Select **Windows tab > Operating System > Software Provisioning > Package Managers**.
3. Select one or more machines, and click **Add Source**.
4. On the Select Machines page, verify that the machines displayed in the lower pane are the machines to which you want to add the source and click **Next**.
5. On the Enter or Select Source page, configure the options, and click **Next**.
 - a. Select either **Add source at the beginning of existing source lists** or **Add source at the end of the existing source list**.
 - b. Click **Browse Sources**.
 - c. On the Browse Sources page, select one of the following in the Show Sources from drop-down menu.
 - **Package Manager Source Lists:** Select this option if you have already added sources to at least one Package Manager and you want to add the source to other Package Managers. When you click **OK**, the selected source populates the Platform and Section on the Enter or Select Source page.

- d. Select the URI and click **OK**.
 - e. Verify that the Platform name and the Section name are exactly the names used in the repository.
6. On the Schedule page, select one of the scheduling options and configure as needed.
 7. On the Confirmation page, review the information and click **Finish**.

The added source is displayed in the **Package Manager - Sources** data grid.

What to do next

Install software packages on target machines. See ["Install Packages" on page 186](#).

Install Packages

The process of installing packages includes identifying and processing dependencies and conflicts; running any specified pre-scripts; running the installation using any specified command arguments; and running any specified post-scripts. You can also remove packages.

Prerequisites

Verify that you added the repository sources to the Package Managers. See ["Add Repository Sources to Package Managers" on page 185](#).

Procedure

1. Click **Console**.
2. Select **Windows tab > Operating System > Software Provisioning > Package Managers**.
3. Click **Install Package**.
4. On the Select Machines page, verify that the machines displayed in the lower pane are the machines to which you want to install the package and click **Next**.

5. On the Select Package page, select the package to install.
6. Select one of the following version options.

| Option | Description |
|---|--|
| Install Version | Installs the specified version. By default the operator equals the package selected in the list. However, you may select a different operator and type the version number in the text box. |
| Install latest available version on all platforms | Installs the latest version of the package available from the sources configured for the Package Manager. |

7. Configure the Security Options and click **Next**.

Determine whether a package is installed or removed based on the state of the signature.

| Option | Description |
|--|---|
| Install secure signed package only | The package must be signed and the public key of the signing certificate you used to sign the package is available on all the machines on which you are installing or removing the package. |
| Skip signature validation when installing a signed package | (Not Recommended) The package is installed or removed without attempting to verify the signature. |
| Allow unsigned package to be installed | (Not recommended) The package is installed or removed even if it is unsigned. |

8. On the Schedule page, select one of the scheduling options and configure as needed
9. On the Confirmation page, review the information, resolve any conflicts, and click **Finish**.

You can monitor the process in the **Jobs Manager**. See ["Viewing Provisioning Jobs in the Job Manager" on page 188](#).

The package is displayed as Installed in the **Package Manager - Packages** data grid.

Related Software Provisioning Actions

You can use the following management options in VCM when working with software provisioning.

| Option | Description |
|----------------|--|
| Console | <p>All Software Provisioning are available for auditing as part of Change Management. Click Console and select Change Management > VCM Initiated or Non VCM Initiated to view the data.</p> <p>Software Provisioning actions are not eligible for rollback through Change Management. Undo unwanted changes using Compliance enforcement remediation actions. See "Create Compliance Rules Containing Software Provisioning Remediation Actions" on page 190.</p> <p>Non VCM Initiated changes related to Software Provisioning include publishing packages to repositories from Package Studio and manually running command-line actions in Package Manager.</p> |
| Compliance | <p>You can create compliance rules based on software provisioning data types, and you can add provisioning remediation actions to rules. See "Create Compliance Rules Based on Software Provisioning Data" on page 189 and "Create Compliance Rules Containing Software Provisioning Remediation Actions" on page 190.</p> |
| Reports | <p>You can run reports on collected Software Provisioning data. Click Reports and select Machine Group Reports > Software Provisioning to run the default reports, or you can create your own.</p> |
| Administration | <p>Displays current jobs running, and job history. Use the job history when troubleshooting the processing of a job. See "Viewing Provisioning Jobs in the Job Manager" on page 188.</p> <p>Define user access rules and roles to specify what level of access users have to the Software Provisioning data and actions in VCM. Click Administration and select User Rules and Roles > User Manager > VCM Access to configure the Access Rules and Roles.</p> |

Viewing Provisioning Jobs in the Job Manager

The Jobs Manager tells you the state of a currently running Provisioning job, including the success or failure of a job, either collecting data from machines or installing, updating, or removing packages from machines.

The currently running provisioning jobs are visible in the following locations:

- Jobs button. Located on the portal toolbar.
- Administration slider. Select **Administration > Job Manager > Running**.

Job history is available in **Administration > Job Manager > Other Jobs**. The provisioning related job names include the following types of jobs:

- Change Request: Add Source
- Change Request: Remove Source
- Change Request: Install Package
- Change Request: Remove Package

Create Compliance Rules Based on Software Provisioning Data

A Compliance rule based on software provisioning data detects any packages or sources that are out of compliance. You can configure remediation actions to bring the machines back into compliance.

In this example the Compliance rule checks whether the source, where the values are platform=Any and section=Release, was added to selected Package Managers as a source. If not, then add the repository source to the machines where the rule fails.

Procedure

1. Click **Compliance**.
2. Select **Machine Group Compliance > Rule Groups**.
3. Expand your rule group and select **Rules**.
4. On the Rules data grid, click **Add**.
5. Type a Name and Description for your rule and click **Next**.
6. On the Data Type page, expand **Windows** and select the data type on which you are basing the rule and click **Next**.
 In this example, select **Software Provisioning - Package Managers - Sources**.
7. On the Rule Type page, select **Conditional (if/then)** and click **Next**.
8. On the Conditional Data page, configure the options.
 - a. In the IF area, click **Add**.
 - b. Select `Source Repository URI = YourRepository`.
 - c. Select **Must Exist**.
 - d. In the THEN area, click **Add** and select `Platform = Any` and `Section = Release`.
 - e. Click **Next**.
9. On the Options page, configure the settings.
 - a. Select a Severity in the drop-down menu.
 - b. Select **Make available for enforcement where possible**.
 - c. Select **Software Provisioning action**.
 - d. Select **Add Source** in the drop-down menu and click **Define Action**.
 - e. On the Software Provisioning Compliance Remediation page, select **Add source to the beginning of existing source list**.
 - f. Click **Browse Sources** and select the repository URI where the Platform=Any and Section=Release exist, and click **OK**.
 The Platform and Section update with Any and Release respectively.
 - g. Click **OK**.
 - h. Click **Next**.
10. On the Collection filters page, select the **Provisioning - Package Managers** collection filter and click **Next**.
11. On the Important page, review the information and click **Finish** to save your rule.

What to do next

Add the rule to your template. When the Compliance Template is run, it checks the target machines to determine if the repository source is added as a source. If it is not, the source is added to the machines Package Manager.

Create Compliance Rules Containing Software Provisioning Remediation Actions

When configuring a Compliance rule, you can configure the rule to perform a remediation based on a software provisioning action such as Install Package, Remove Package, Add Source, or Remove Source.

In this procedure, the example is to determine whether a software application named XSoftware is installed. If the software is installed correctly, a service named XService should be running. Configure a Compliance rule to determine if XService service is running. If it is not running, install the XSoftware package.

Procedure

1. Click **Compliance**.
2. Select **Machine Group Compliance > Rule Groups**.
3. Expand your rule group and select **Rules**.
4. On the Rules data grid, click **Add**.
5. On the Rule and Name page, type a Name and Description for your rule and click **Next**.
6. On the Data Type page, expand Windows, select the data type on which you are basing the rule, and click **Next**.

The data type does not need to be software based. In this example, select **Services**.

7. On the Rule Type for Services page, select **Conditional (if/then)** and click **Next**.
8. On the Conditional Data properties page, configure the options and click **Next**.
 - a. In the IF section, click **Add**.
 - b. Select `Services Name = XService`.
 - c. Select **Must Exist**.
 - d. In the THEN section, click **Add**.
 - e. Select `State = Running`.
9. On the Options page, configure the options.
 - a. Select a **Severity** in the drop-down menu.
 - b. Select **Make available for enforcement where possible**.
 - c. Select **Software Provisioning action**.
 - d. Select **Install Package** in the drop-down menu, and click **Define Action**.
 - e. On the Software Provisioning Compliance Remediation page select the XSoftware package to install if the rule you are configuring fails.

- f. Configure the version options to use the selected version, specify a different version, or install the latest version.
- g. Specify the Security Options.

Determine whether a package is installed or removed based on the state of the signature.

| Option | Description |
|--|---|
| Install secure signed package only | The package must be signed and the public key of the signing certificate you used to sign the package is available on all the machines on which you are installing or removing the package. |
| Skip signature validation when installing a signed package | (Not Recommended) The package is installed or removed without attempting to verify the signature. |
| Allow unsigned package to be installed | (Not recommended) The package is installed or removed even if it is unsigned. |

- h. Click **OK** and click **Next**.
10. On the Collection filters page, select the *Services* collection filter and click **Next**.
 11. On the Important page, review the information and click **Finish** to save your rule.

What to do next

Add the rule to your compliance template. When the template is run, if the check for XService running fails, the XSoftware package is installed.

VCM for Active Directory collects Active Directory objects across domains and forests, and displays them through a single console. The information is consolidated and organized under the Active Directory slider, allowing you to view your Active Directory structure, troubleshoot issues, detect change, and ensure compliance.

You can filter, sort, and group Active Directory data to pinpoint the specific area of interest. You can also view a subset of your Active Directory (a forest, domain, or specific organizational unit branch) by setting the Active Directory location in the AD Location field near the top of VCM. Dashboards display high level information in graphical form, alerts notify you about problems or misconfigurations, and change management tracks changes to the Active Directory objects or configuration by data type.

Configure Domain Controllers

To manage your Active Directory environment, you must verify domains and accounts, discover and license domain controllers, install the VCM Agent, and collect data from the domain controllers.

Procedure

1. ["Verify Available Domains" on page 194](#)

Allow VCM access to each domain so that the VCM Collector can interact with the domain controllers in your environment.

2. ["Check the Network Authority Account" on page 194](#)

Verify that at least one domain account with administrator privileges is available to act as a network authority account for VCM.

3. ["Assign Network Authority Accounts" on page 195](#)

Select and assign the network authority account that you identified for VCM access to the domain controllers.

4. ["Discover Domain Controllers" on page 195](#)

In your network, identify the domain controllers that you are managing with VCM.

5. ["License Domain Controllers" on page 196](#)

To manage domain controllers, you must license them in VCM.

6. ["Install the VCM Windows Agent on Your Domain Controllers" on page 197](#)

Install the VCM Windows Agent on each domain controller so that you can collect data and manage the virtual or physical machines.

7. [Collect Domain Controller Data](#)

Start managing the domain controllers by performing an initial collection, which adds domain controller data to VCM.

Continuous domain controller management is based on the latest data that you collect from target machines. You can view data and run actions, such as reports or compliance, based on the collected data. See ["Windows Collection Results" on page 85](#).

Verify Available Domains

Allow VCM access to each domain so that the VCM Collector can interact with the domain controllers in your environment.

During installation, VCM discovered all domains to which the network authority account had access. If the domain controllers belong to a domain that is not listed, you must add that domain manually.

Prerequisites

Verify that you have the fully-qualified names of the domains to manage.

Procedure

1. Click **Administration**.
2. Select **Settings > Network Authority > Available Domains**.
3. If the domain does not appear Available Domains view and have a **Domain Type** of Active Directory, add the domain.
 - a. Click **Add**.
 - b. Type the domain name and select the domain type as **AD**.
 - c. Click **OK**.
4. Verify that the domain appears in the data grid.

What to do next

Verify that a network authority account is available and create other necessary domain accounts. See ["Check the Network Authority Account" on page 194](#).

Check the Network Authority Account

Verify that at least one domain account with administrator privileges is available to act as a network authority account for VCM.

VCM network authority accounts must have administrator privileges on each domain to be managed in the organization. Although you specified an initial default network authority account when you installed VCM, you can add different administrator accounts if you do not assign the default account.

Prerequisites

Verify the presence of domains. See ["Verify Available Domains" on page 194](#).

Procedure

1. Click **Administration**.
2. Select **Settings > Network Authority > Available Accounts**.
3. To add a new domain account, click **Add**.
4. Type the domain name, user name, and password, and click **Next**.
5. Click **Finish** to add the account.

What to do next

Assign the network authority account to the domain so that VCM can access the domain controllers in the domain. See ["Assign Network Authority Accounts" on page 195](#).

Assign Network Authority Accounts

Select and assign the network authority account that you identified for VCM access to the domain controllers.

Assign an account with administrator privileges on the domain.

Prerequisites

Verify or add the necessary network authority account. See ["Check the Network Authority Account" on page 194](#).

Procedure

You must perform the following steps twice, once for NetBios and once for Active Directory.

1. Click **Administration**.
2. Select **Settings > Network Authority > Assigned Accounts > By Domain > NetBios**.
3. Select an assigned account.
4. Click **Edit Assigned Accounts**.
5. Select the account to receive authority to the domain and click **Next**.
6. Confirm the accounts to include in the authority list for the domain and click **Finish**.

What to do next

- Repeat the preceding assignment steps, and select Active Directory in step 2.
- Discover the domain controllers in your environment. See ["Discover Domain Controllers" on page 195](#).

Discover Domain Controllers

In your network, identify the domain controllers that you are managing with VCM.

To discover the available domain controllers, VCM uses general discovery rules to identify many Windows machines or uses specific discovery rules to identify particular Windows machines.

The time required to perform an initial discovery depends on the size and composition of your network. If all domain controllers are not available during initial discovery, such as systems that are disconnected from the network, the first discovery will not find all domain controllers. If the discovery does not identify all domain controllers, you might need to run additional discoveries after the other domain controllers become available.

NOTE You can use the Discovered Machines Import Tool (DMIT), which imports machines discovered by the Network Mapper (Nmap), to import many physical and virtual machines at one time into the VCM database. Download DMIT from the VMware Web site.

Prerequisites

Assign a Network Authority Account that VCM can use for access. See ["Assign Network Authority Accounts" on page 195](#).

Procedure

1. Click **Administration**.
2. Select **Machines Manager > Discovery Rules**.
3. Click **Add** to create a discovery rule.
4. Type a name and description and click **Next**.
5. Select **By Browse List** and click **Next**.
6. Select **Only discover machines in the Browse List that match these criteria**.
7. Select and type the following filter parameters.
Where **Domain Controller Type** < > " (two single quotes, no space)
8. Click **Next**.
9. Click **Yes** and click **Finish**.
10. On the toolbar, click **Jobs** to track current discovery job status.

What to do next

- Verify that jobs have finished running. Click **Administration** and select **Job Manager > History > Other Jobs > Past 24 Hours**.
- Verify that the domain controllers are available. Click **Administration** and select **Machines Manager > Available Machines**.
- License the domain controllers in your environment. See ["License Domain Controllers" on page 196](#).

License Domain Controllers

To manage domain controllers, you must license them in VCM.

The number of discovered domain controllers might exceed the number of your available licenses. If that happens, the number available goes negative and appears in red to indicate that you do not have enough licenses.

You can license more servers or workstations than your license key allows. Any license key counts that exceed the number of licenses provided by your license key are recorded and maintained for future auditing purposes.

Prerequisites

Verify that the domain controllers you license are listed with a machine type of workstation or server in the Available Machines node. If the discovered or added type is not workstation or server, VCM cannot license the machines.

Procedure

1. Click **Administration**.
2. Select **Machines Manager > Available Machines**.
3. Select the domain controllers to license.
4. Click **License**.
5. Verify that the domain controllers to license appear in the Selected list.
Use the arrows to move the domain controllers.
6. Click **Next** to view your Product License Details.
The licensed domain controller count increases by the number of licensed machines.
7. Click **Next**.
VCM confirms that the licenses you requested will be applied to the selected domain controllers.
8. Click **Finish**.

What to do next

- If you are working with Windows 7, 2008, 2008 R2, or Vista domain controllers, disable User Account Control (UAC). See the instructions in ["Disable User Account Control for VCM Agent Installation" on page 75](#) before you proceed.
- Install the VCM Windows Agent. See ["Install the VCM Windows Agent on Your Domain Controllers" on page 197](#).

Install the VCM Windows Agent on Your Domain Controllers

Install the VCM Windows Agent on each domain controller so that you can collect data and manage the virtual or physical machines.

Before you can collect data from domain controllers, you must install the VCM Windows Agent on the licensed domain controllers in your environment to enable communication between the Collector and the target machines.

Standardized Windows configurations such as Federal Desktop Core Configuration (FDCC) or United States Government Configuration Baseline (USGCB) include strict security group policy settings. The **Windows Firewall: Do not Allow Exceptions** group policy configures Windows Firewall to block all unsolicited incoming messages, including configured exceptions. This setting overrides all configured exceptions. For VCM to communicate properly with the VCM Agent on managed machines in strict, secure environments, disable the **Windows Firewall: Do not Allow Exceptions** group policy on the managed machines. For more information, see support.microsoft.com.

Prerequisites

- License the domain controllers on which you install the Agent. See ["License Domain Controllers" on page 196](#).
- Disable UAC before you install the Agent on Windows 7, 2008, 2008 R2, or Vista machines. See ["Disable User Account Control for VCM Agent Installation" on page 75](#).
- Verify that you know the communication protocols and ports that are used by the Collector and the Agents.

Procedure

1. Click **Administration**.
2. Select **Machines Manager > Licensed Machines > Licensed Windows Machines**.
3. In the data grid, select one or more domain controllers on which to install the Agent and click **Install**.
4. On the Machines page, verify that the target machines appear in the Selected list and click **Next**.
5. On the Install Options page, select the default installation options and click **Next**.
6. On the Schedule page, select **Run Action now** and click **Next**.
You can schedule subsequent Agent installations to run later.
7. Review the summary information and click **Finish**.

What to do next

- Verify that jobs have finished running. Click **Administration** and select **Job Manager > History > Other Jobs > Past 24 Hours**.
- If you are working with Windows 7, 2008, 2008 R2, or Vista domain controllers, enable User Account Control (UAC). See the instructions in ["Enable UAC After VCM Agent Installation" on page 83](#) before you proceed.
- Collect Windows data from VCM managed domain controllers in your environment. See ["Collect Domain Controller Data" on page 198](#).

Collect Domain Controller Data

Start managing the domain controllers by performing an initial collection, which adds domain controller data to VCM.

Use the default filter set to collect a general view of the domain controllers in your environment. The first time that you use the default filter to collect data, the Windows Agent returns all of the data specified in the filter and stores the data in the VCM database. All subsequent collections will return a delta against the data previously collected.

A delta collection includes only the differences between the data on the target machine and the data stored in the VCM database. If you need a full collection, you can specify that VCM collect all data again. A full collection can take a significant amount of time depending on the number of VCM managed domain controllers from which you are collecting.

When you perform a full collection from your entire environment, run the collection during nonworking hours so that users do not notice any performance impact on managed machines. After the initial collection is finished, subsequent delta collections will most likely not impact performance.

Prerequisites

- To collect data from Windows XP SP2 or Vista machines that use DCOM communication, you must enable ICMP pings in the firewall settings or disable ICMP pings in VCM.
- Verify that DCOM is enabled on the managed machine. Run `dcomcnfg` and select **Enable Distributed COM on this computer**.

Procedure

1. On the VCM toolbar, click **Collect**.
2. On the Collection Type page, select **Machine Data** and click **OK**.
3. On the Machines page, select the domain controllers from which to collect data and click **Next**.
To move all visible domain controllers to the selection window, use the double arrow.
4. Select the **Do not limit collection to deltas** check box.
This option ensures that a full collection occurs during the initial set up of VCM for Active Directory.
5. On the Data Types page, select **Machines**.
6. Select **Use default filters** and click **Next**.
7. On the Important page, resolve any conflicts and click **Finish**.

What to do next

Add VCM for Active Directory. See ["Configure VCM for Active Directory as an Additional Product" on page 199](#).

Configure VCM for Active Directory as an Additional Product

After VCM has discovered, licensed, and installed the Windows Agent on your domain controllers, configure VCM for Active Directory as an additional product. Configuring VCM for Active Directory provides the mechanism that allows VCM to manage the Active Directory forests and collect detailed schema information.

Procedure

1. ["Install VCM for Active Directory on the Domain Controllers" on page 199](#)
To use VCM to collect Active Directory data from your environment, install VCM for Active Directory on your domain controllers.
2. ["Run the Determine Forest Action" on page 200](#)
VCM for Active Directory requires a forest determination for all domain controllers so that it can proceed with schema and structure collection.
3. ["Run the Domain Controller Setup Action" on page 201](#)
VCM for Active Directory collects your Active Directory schema and structure as part of the domain controller setup action.

Install VCM for Active Directory on the Domain Controllers

To use VCM to collect Active Directory data from your environment, install VCM for Active Directory on your domain controllers.

VCM for Active Directory will operate with only a single domain controller configured with VCM for Active Directory, which will serve as both the forest data source (FDS) and replication data source (RDS). However, to collect important nonreplicated attributes such as Last Logon, install VCM for Active Directory on as many domain controllers as possible.

Prerequisites

- Discover, license, and install the VCM Windows Agent on your domain controllers. See ["Configure Domain Controllers" on page 193](#).
- Verify that jobs have finished running. Click **Administration** and select **Job Manager > History > Other Jobs > Past 24 Hours**.

Procedure

1. Click **Administration**.
2. Select **Machines Manager > Additional Components > VCM for Active Directory**.
3. Click **Install**.
4. Move the domain controllers on which to install VCM for Active Directory to the lower pane.
5. Click **Next**.
6. Verify that **Run Action now** is selected and click **Finish**.

If you add future Active Directory machines to your environment, configure them with VCM for Active Directory by running the following installer.

```
Program Files (x86)\VMware\VCM\AgentFiles\ADProductInstall.exe
```

What to do next

Determine the Active Directory forest in your environment. See ["Run the Determine Forest Action" on page 200](#).

Run the Determine Forest Action

VCM for Active Directory requires a forest determination for all domain controllers so that it can proceed with schema and structure collection.

Prerequisites

- Install VCM for Active Directory on your domain controllers. See ["Install VCM for Active Directory on the Domain Controllers" on page 199](#).
- Verify that jobs have finished running. Click **Administration** and select **Job Manager > History > Other Jobs > Past 24 Hours**.

Procedure

1. Click **Administration**.
2. Select **Machines Manager > Additional Components > VCM for Active Directory**.
3. Click **Determine Forest**.
4. Move the domain controllers on which to determine the forest to the lower pane.

Determine the forest for all available domain controllers.

5. Click **Next**.
6. Click **Finish**.

What to do next

Run the domain controller setup action and identify your FDS and RDS. See ["Run the Domain Controller Setup Action" on page 201](#).

Run the Domain Controller Setup Action

VCM for Active Directory collects your Active Directory schema and structure as part of the domain controller setup action.

During setup, you select a Forest Data Source (FDS) and Replication Data Source (RDS). Select machines that have reliable connections and availability. The same domain controller is allowed to serve as both FDS and RDS.

- **FDS:** VCM for Active Directory uses the FDS as a resource for all Forest-level information. You identify one FDS for each Forest.
- **RDS:** The RDS supplies all replicated data to VCM for Active Directory. You identify only one RDS for each domain so that collections on replicated attributes are performed only on a single domain controller. Other domain controllers that have VCM for Active Directory installed are accessed only during collection of nonreplicated attributes.

If you change your RDS, VCM for Active Directory does not purge data collected from the old RDS. The data is refreshed when you run a new collection using the new RDS.

Prerequisites

- Use VCM for Active Directory to determine the Forest. See ["Run the Determine Forest Action" on page 200](#).
- Verify that jobs have finished running. Click **Administration** and select **Job Manager > History > Other Jobs > Past 24 Hours**.

Procedure

1. Click **Administration**.
2. Select **Machines Manager > Additional Components > VCM for Active Directory**.
3. Click **Setup DCs**.
4. Select an FDS for each forest and click **Next**.
5. Select an RDS for each domain and click **Next**.
6. Click **Finish**.

When the Setup DCs action finishes, VCM for Active Directory initiates the following jobs.

- Active Directory schema collection
- Active Directory specifier collection
- Active Directory structure collection

The information obtained from the third collection identifies the organizational unit (OU) structure that supports the use of VCM for Active Directory. To view information, click **Administration**, and select **Machines Manager > Additional Components > VCM for Active Directory**.

What to do next

Collect Active Directory data. See ["Collect Active Directory Data " on page 201](#).

Collect Active Directory Data

Perform your first collection of Active Directory objects by launching the same collection wizard that you use for Windows and UNIX/Linux collections. The first time you run an Active Directory collection, the Agent returns all objects and attributes from your selected Active Directory environment.

Prerequisites

- Install VCM for Active Directory. See ["Configure VCM for Active Directory as an Additional Product" on page 199.](#)
- Verify that jobs have finished by clicking **Administration** and selecting **Job Manager > History > Other Jobs > Past 24 Hours.**

Procedure

1. From the toolbar, click **Collect.**
2. On the Collection Type page, select **Active Directory** and click **OK.**
3. On the AD Collection Options page, click **Select Data Types to collect from these machines.**
4. To ensure that a full collection occurs, select the **Do not limit collection to deltas** check box and click **Next.**
5. On the Data Types page, click **Select All.**
6. Select the **Use default filters** option and click **Next.**
7. On the Location page, click the ellipsis button (...).
8. On the Select an AD Location page, expand the **Enterprise** tree, select an Active Directory Location, and click **OK.**
9. On the Location page, click **Next.**
10. Click **Finish.**

What to do next

Explore initial Active Directory collection results. See ["Active Directory Collection Results" on page 202.](#)

Active Directory Collection Results

After you collect the initial Active Directory data, explore the results under Active Directory, Reports, and Compliance.

Displayed information is only as current as the last time that you collected Active Directory data.

| Option | Description |
|---------------------------------|---|
| Active Directory Dashboard | <p>Provides summary and day-to-day information about your Active Directory environment in a graphical format.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ To view the dashboard, click Active Directory and select Dashboards > Managed Objects. <p>Several Active Directory Dashboards are available.</p> |
| Active Directory Object Summary | <p>Provides summary information about your Active Directory environment in a textual format.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ To view the summary reports, click Active Directory and select Objects > object-type. |
| Active Directory Object Detail | <p>Provides the detailed information behind the summary for your Active Directory environment.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ To view the detailed information, click Active Directory and select Objects > object-type. Click the View data grid button. |

| Option | Description |
|------------|--|
| | From the data grid view, you can enable or disable the summary to view the details immediately. |
| Reports | Provides Active Directory information by running preconfigured or custom reports against the latest collected data. The time needed for a report to generate depends on the volume or complexity of the data requested. <ul style="list-style-type: none">■ To use the reporting options, click Reports and expand Active Directory Reports. |
| Compliance | Provides preconfigured Active Directory compliance rules and templates, which allow you to check the collected data against specific values. <ul style="list-style-type: none">■ To view Active Directory compliance rules, click Compliance and select Active Directory Compliance > Rule Groups.■ To view Active Directory compliance templates, click Compliance and select Active Directory Compliance > Templates. |

Configuring Remote Machines

The VCM Remote client is the communication and management mechanism that you use to manage mobile Windows machines as they connect to and disconnect from the network.

For Windows machines that are not continuously connected to the network, the VCM Remote client listens for network events indicating it has access to the VCM Remote-related components on the VCM Internet Information Services (IIS) server. Based on the configured settings, the Collector creates requests, such as a collection request, for the remote machine that has just come online.

VCM Remote Management Workflow

To indicate the presence of the mobile Windows machine on your network, the VCM Remote client sends an HTML POST file over HTTP to a server-side component residing on the VCM Internet Information Services (IIS) server. Based on user-defined settings, the Collector auto-licenses the remote machine, installs or upgrades the VCM Windows Agent, and determines whether it should submit a collection job for that remote machine.

The Collector batches the requests and processes them at periodic intervals. This batch processing manages the problem of having 15,000 clients come online within a short time of one another and creating 15,000 individual requests.

Configuring VCM Remote Connection Types

The VCM Remote client accommodates three connection methods, including broadband, dial-up, and LAN, for Windows machines that do not have a continuous connection to the network.

To optimize the collection of the Windows machine data, you configure different collection filters for different connection types based on general bandwidth for each connection type.

- **Broadband:** DSL and cable connections can be 156Kb to more than 1Mb.
- **Dial-up:** A dial-up connection can be 56Kb or less.
- **LAN:** A local area connection to the network equal to or greater than 1Mb. A VPN connection might be available at LAN speeds but connected over the Internet.

For each connection type, you assign a customized collection filter set. For example, when a remote machine connects using a dial-up connection, you use a collection filter set that collects only key data compared to a filter set for LAN connections that collects more data from the target machines.

Using Certificates With VCM Remote

The use of certificates with VCM Remote ensures secure communication between VCM and the VCM Remote client when they are communicating outside your internal network.

The communication between the Collector and the VCM Remote client is secured using Transport Layer Security (TLS) certificates. You can use the VCM certificate or you can use an existing Enterprise certificate.

- **VCM Certificate:** A certificate generated during the installation of VCM. The VCM certificate is located on the Collector at `[install_path]\VMware\VCM\CollectorData`. You must copy the `.pem` file to each target machine.
- **Enterprise Certificate:** A certificate already in the certificate store in your environment.

Determine the certificate that you are using to validate communication, either a VCM-generated or a Enterprise certificate in certificate store. By default, the installation of a Windows VCM Agent in HTTP mode adds the Collector's Enterprise Certificate to the certificate store of the client system. The VCM Remote client can also use this certificate.

After you install the VCM Remote client, the first time the remote machine connects the Collector network, it requests a Collector certificate. If the Collector certificate is trusted by the Enterprise certificate on the client, the Collector certificate is added to the client's certificate store.

Configure and Install the VCM Remote Client

You configure the VCM Remote client server-side communication settings and then install the client on target Windows machines. After it is installed, the VCM Remote client manages the communication with VCM when the remote machine is connected to the network.

Procedure

1. ["Configure the VCM Remote Settings" on page 206](#)

You create custom filter sets for each communication method and configure the settings to ensure efficient on-going management of the mobile Windows machines managed using the VCM Remote client.

2. ["Install the VCM Remote Client" on page 209](#)

You install the VCM Remote client on the target Windows machines that are not continuously connected to the network.

3. ["Connect VCM Remote Client Machines to the Network" on page 216](#)

Connect your remote machine to the VCM-managed network to begin managing the machine. The VCM Remote client notifies VCM that the remote machine is on the network and it is processed based on VCM Remote settings and requires no user interaction.

When you configure Windows machines with the VCM Remote client, the client handles the communication when the remote machine connects to the network, but the machines are managed as Windows machines. See ["VCM Remote Collection Results" on page 217](#).

Configure the VCM Remote Settings

You create custom filter sets for each communication method and configure the settings to ensure efficient on-going management of the mobile Windows machines managed using the VCM Remote client.

Procedure

1. ["Create Custom Collection Filter Sets" on page 207](#)

You create custom collection filter sets for Dial-up, Broadband, or LAN connections to efficiently manage mobile machines using the VCM Remote client. To optimize results, create a different filter set for each connection type.

2. ["Specify Custom Filter Sets in the VCM Remote Settings" on page 208](#)

VCM Remote supports three connection types: broadband, dial-up, and LAN. To optimize the collection of data, you must specify the collection filter set for each connection used in your environment.

3. ["Specify Agent and Host File Settings" on page 208](#)

To ensure the VCM Remote client efficiently installs or upgrades the Agent and manages communication, you must configure the server settings on the Collector.

Create Custom Collection Filter Sets

You create custom collection filter sets for Dial-up, Broadband, or LAN connections to efficiently manage mobile machines using the VCM Remote client. To optimize results, create a different filter set for each connection type.

With filter sets based on connection type rather than using the default filter set, you can optimize collections based on the stability and speed of the connection. For example, an all encompassing collection is difficult to complete over a dial-up connection. To optimize the collection performance, create a dial-up filter set that is limited to a few high-importance data types and does not include the File System Uploads or Emergency Repair Disk data types.

Prerequisites

Review the purpose of the different connection types to understand what to include or exclude from your collection filter sets. See ["Configuring VCM Remote Connection Types" on page 205](#)

Procedure

1. Click **Administration**.
2. Select **Collection Filters > Filter Sets**.
3. On the Collection Filter Sets data grid, click **Add Filter Set**.
4. On the Name and Description page, type a Name and Description.
For example, use names similar to Remote Client - Broadband, Remote Client - LAN, and Remote Client - Dial-up.
5. Select **Filter Set** and click **Next**.
6. On the Filters page, select **Machine Based Filter Set**.
7. Select the filters to include in the filter set and click **Next**.
8. On the Conflicts page, resolve any data type conflicts and click **Next**.
9. On the Important page, review the summary information and click **Finish**.

What to do next

- Repeat the procedure for all the connection types for which you configure filter sets.
- Assign the filter sets to the appropriate VCM Remote settings. See ["Specify Custom Filter Sets in the VCM Remote Settings" on page 208](#).

Specify Custom Filter Sets in the VCM Remote Settings

VCM Remote supports three connection types: broadband, dial-up, and LAN. To optimize the collection of data, you must specify the collection filter set for each connection used in your environment.

When a mobile Windows machine connects to the network using one of three connection types and the VCM Remote client indicates the presence of the machine, VCM determines the connection type and uses the collection filter specified for the connection when collecting data from the target machine. This method enables mobile VCM Remote client machines to connect using any of the connection types and to collect data using a filter set optimized for the connection type.

Prerequisites

Create VCM Remote collection filter sets, one for each connection type. See ["Create Custom Collection Filter Sets" on page 207](#).

Procedure

1. Click **Administration**.
2. Select **Settings > General Settings > VCM Remote**.
3. On the VCM Remote Settings data grid, select each setting separately and click **Edit Settings**.
 - Name of the Collection Filter Set Remote will use for Broadband connections
 - Name of the Collection Filter Set Remote will use for Dialup connections
 - Name of the Collection Filter Set Remote will use for LAN connections
4. On the Edit Settings page, select the related filter set in the drop-down menu and click **Next**.
5. On the Important page, review the summary and click **Finish**.

What to do next

- Repeat the procedure for the other settings.
- Configure the Agent and host file settings. See ["Specify Agent and Host File Settings" on page 208](#).

Specify Agent and Host File Settings

To ensure the VCM Remote client efficiently installs or upgrades the Agent and manages communication, you must configure the server settings on the Collector.

Procedure

1. Click **Administration**.
2. Select **Settings > General Settings > VCM Remote**.
3. On the VCM Remote Settings data grid, select each setting separately and click **Edit Settings**.

| Option | Configuration |
|---|--|
| Should Remote automatically install an Agent to the client (if required)? | Click Yes . Allows VCM to install the Agent when contacted by the VCM Remote client the first time. |
| Should Remote automatically upgrade an Agent to the client (if required)? | Click Yes . Allows VCM to upgrade the Agent when contacted by the VCM Remote client. |
| Will IP Address of calling client be added to local host file? | Click Yes . Adds the IP address of the VCM Remote client to the host file to ensure that the remote client name is resolved and updated so that communication can begin. |
| Minutes to retain host File Entry | Type 30 or greater to specify 30 minutes or longer. Retains the IP address of the VCM Remote client in the host file for the set time to ensure that the remote client name is quickly resolved and updated during that time. |

4. Configure the setting and click **Next**.
5. On the Important page, review the summary and click **Finish**.

What to do next

- Repeat procedure for the other settings on the VCM Remote Settings data grid.
- Install the VCM Remote client. See "[Install the VCM Remote Client](#)" on page 209.

Install the VCM Remote Client

You install the VCM Remote client on the target Windows machines that are not continuously connected to the network.

To install the VCM Remote client, use the method easiest to implement depending on your access to the target machines and the number of remote machines on which you are installing the client.

- ["Install the VCM Remote Client Manually" on page 210](#)

The manual installation of the VCM Remote client is a wizard-based process that you use when you have direct access to the target machines. This process is a useful way to install the client if you are creating an image to install on other machines.

- ["Install the VCM Remote Client Using a Command Line" on page 211](#)

You use the command line to install the VCM Remote client when you want to run an unattended installation using Group Policy or software provisioning.

- ["Install the VCM Remote Client Using Windows Remote Commands" on page 213](#)

You use the Windows remote commands to deploy the VCM Remote client to multiple machines in your environment. The VCM Agent must be installed on the target machines.

Install the VCM Remote Client Manually

The manual installation of the VCM Remote client is a wizard-based process that you use when you have direct access to the target machines. This process is a useful way to install the client if you are creating an image to install on other machines.

Prerequisites

Determine the certificate that you are using to validate communication between the client and the Collector. See ["Using Certificates With VCM Remote" on page 206](#).

Procedure

1. On the target machine, create a folder and copy the files from the Collector to the target folder.

| File | Description |
|-----------------------------------|--|
| CM Remote Client.msi | Located on the Collector at [install path]\VMware\VCM\AgentFiles. |
| CM_Enterprise_Certificate_XXX.pem | (Optional) Located on the Collector at [install path]\VMware\VCM\CollectorData. Copy the file if you do not have or are not using the Enterprise certificate located in the remote machine's certificate store. |

2. On the target machine, double-click the CM Remote Client.msi file.
3. On the VCM Remote Client Setup page, click **Next**.
4. On the Installation Folder page, accept the default installation location or click **Change** to enter a different location, and click **Next**.

5. On the VCM Remote Client Information page, configure the options and click **Next**.

| Option | Description |
|------------------------|--|
| Collector Machine Name | Name of the Windows machine on which the VCM Collector and Microsoft IIS are installed. |
| Path to ASP Page | Path for the IIS default VCM Remote Web site. The <virtual directory name> must match the virtual directory name as it appears in the Collector's IIS. The default value is VCMRemote. |

6. On the Select Certificates page, configure the certificate option that supports your environment and click **Next**.

| Option | Description |
|-----------------------------|---|
| Certificate File | Browse to the location of the VCM-generated .pem file you copied from the Collector. |
| Skip Certificate Deployment | Select the option to use the existing Enterprise certificate in the client certificate store. |

7. On the Ready to install CM Remote Client page, click **Install**.
8. Click **Finish** when the installation is completed.

What to do next

Connect the remote machine to the network to ensure that VCM completes the installation process. See ["Connect VCM Remote Client Machines to the Network" on page 216](#)

Install the VCM Remote Client Using a Command Line

You use the command line to install the VCM Remote client when you want to run an unattended installation using Group Policy or software provisioning.

Prerequisites

Determine the certificate that you are using to validate communication between the client and the Collector. See ["Using Certificates With VCM Remote" on page 206](#).

Procedure

1. On the target machine, create a folder and copy the files from the Collector to the target folder.

| File | Description |
|-----------------------------------|--|
| CM Remote Client.msi | Located on the Collector at [install path]\VMware\VCM\AgentFiles. |
| CM_Enterprise_Certificate_xxx.pem | (Optional) Located on the Collector at [install path]\VMware\VCM\CollectorData. Copy the file if you do not have or are not using the Enterprise certificate located in the remote machine's certificate store. |

2. At a command prompt, edit the installation command for you environment, and run the command.

If the names and paths contain spaces, you must use double quotation marks.

```
msiexec.exe /qn /i "[path]\cm remote client.msi" COLLECTOR="YourCollectorName"
  PATHTOASP="VCMRemote/ecmremotehttp.asp" INSTALLDIR="c:\Program Files
(x86)\VMware\VCM Remote Client" CERTIFICATE_
FILE="[path]\YourEnterpriseCertificateName.pem" /l*v "[path\]filename.log"
```

| Option | Description |
|---|--|
| /qn | No error messages appear during installation. |
| [path]\cm remote client.msi | Path to the CM Remote Client.msi on the target machine. |
| COLLECTOR=YourCollectorName | Replace <YourCollectorName> with the name of your VCM Collector. |
| PATHTOASP=VCMRemote/ecmremotehttp.asp | Path to the IIS Default Web Site virtual directory containing ecmremotehttp.asp. |
| INSTALLDIR:c:\Program Files (x86)\VCM\CM Remote Client | Path where you want the VCM Remote client files installed. The directory is created by the command. |
| CERTIFICATE_FILE=[path]\YourEnterpriseCertificateName.pem | Certificate path and name on the target machine. If you are using an existing Enterprise certificate in the client certificate store, you use SKIP_CERTIFICATE_FILE=1 instead of CERTIFICATE_FILE=[path]\YourEnterpriseCertificateName.pem If the certificate does not exist in the store, any communication between the client and the Collector will fail. |
| /l*v [path\]filename.log | Error messages added to the log file in the specified path. If the path is not specified, the log file is saved in the directory from which |

| Option | Description |
|--------|--------------------------|
| | the msiexec.exe was run. |

What to do next

Connect the remote machine to the network to ensure that VCM completes the installation process. See ["Connect VCM Remote Client Machines to the Network" on page 216](#)

Install the VCM Remote Client Using Windows Remote Commands

You use the Windows remote commands to deploy the VCM Remote client to multiple machines in your environment. The VCM Agent must be installed on the target machines.

The script installs the VCM Remote client under the Windows directory rather than the Program Files directory. It is not necessary to create the install directory on the target machine before you run the script.

Prerequisites

- Verify that the Agent is installed on target machines. See ["Configuring Windows Machines" on page 71](#).
- Identify the certificate you are using to validate communication between the client and the Collector. See ["Using Certificates With VCM Remote" on page 206](#).

Procedure

1. On your Collector, copy [install path]\Enterprise Configuration Manager\AgentFiles\CM Remote Client.msi to [install path]\Enterprise Configuration Manager\WebConsole\L1033\Files\Remote_Command_Files.
2. On your Collector, copy [install path]\Enterprise Configuration Manager\CollectorData\- 3. In VCM, select **Console > Windows Remote Commands**.
- 4. On the data grid toolbar, click **Add**.
- 5. On the Name and Description page, type a unique name and description for the command, and click **Next**.
- 6. On the **Remote Command** page, configure the command.
 - a. In the **Type** drop-down menu, select VBScript.
 - b. In **Command Text** text box, copy and paste the script and modify it as specified in the script comments.

```
Call DoWork
'Copyright 1999-2010 VMware, Inc.
'Coded by Ryan L.
'Description: Installs VCM Remote ver. 2
'Modified 4/27/2008 - Stephen S. Included Certificate file options
'Modified 7/7/2010 - VCM

Dim sCollName, sInstallDir, sVirDir, sAddRemove, sCertFile, bInstallCert
```

```

Sub DoWork()

Set WshShell = CreateObject("WScript.Shell")

sCollName = "YourCollectorName" 'Name of your VCM Collector machine in
quotes

bInstallCert = 1 'If the value is 1, the Enterprise Certificate is
installed. If the value is set to 0, the installation of the certificate is
skipped and it is assumed that the certificate is already present. The
Remote Client will NOT function until the Enterprise Certificate is
installed as specified in Step 2

sCertFile = "EnterpriseCert" 'The filename of your enterprise certificate
(.pem file) as identified in Step 2

sVirDir = "VCMRemote/EcmRemoteHttp.asp" 'Where you replace CMRemote with
the IIS Default Web Site virtual directory containing the ECMRemoteHTTP.asp
file

sInstallDir = WshShell.ExpandEnvironmentStrings("%windir%") & "\VMware\VCM
Remote Client" 'The installation directory on the TARGET machine

sAddRemove = 1 'Whether or not VCM remote should appear in the Add/Remove
programs List, should be 0 = hide, 1 = show

sMSIPackageName = "CM Remote Client.msi" 'Name of the MSI package that
installs VCM Remote Agent

CheckVars

If sAddRemove = 0 Then

AppToRun = "msiexec.exe /qn /i " & Chr(34) &
EcmAgtContext.JobDownloadDirectory & "\" & sMSIPackageName & Chr(34) & "
ALLUSERS=1 COLLECTOR=" & Chr(34) & sCollName & Chr(34) & " PATHTOASP=" &
Chr(34) & sVirDir & Chr(34) & " ARPSYSTEMCOMPONENT=" & sAddRemove & "
INSTALLDIR=" & Chr(34) & sInstallDir & Chr(34)

Else

AppToRun = "msiexec.exe /qn /i " & Chr(34) &
EcmAgtContext.JobDownloadDirectory & "\" & sMSIPackageName & Chr(34) & "
ALLUSERS=1 COLLECTOR=" & Chr(34) & sCollName & Chr(34) & " PATHTOASP=" &
Chr(34) & sVirDir & Chr(34) & " INSTALLDIR=" & Chr(34) & sInstallDir &
Chr(34)

End If

If bInstallCert = 1 Then

AppToRun = AppToRun & " CERTIFICATE_FILE=" & Chr(34) &
EcmAgtContext.JobDownloadDirectory & "\" & sCertFile & Chr(34)

Else

AppToRun = AppToRun & "SKIP_CERTIFICATE_FILE=1"

```

```
End If
EcmScriptRuntime.CmdExecute Chr(34) & AppToRun & Chr(34), 10000
End Sub

Sub CheckVars()
If sCollName = "" Then
WScript.Quit
Else
sCollName = Trim(sCollName)
End If

If sVirDir = "" Then
sVirDir = "vcmremote/ecmremotehttp.asp"
Else
sVirDir = Trim(sVirDir)
End If

If sInstallDir = "" Then
sInstallDir = "c:\vcm remote client"
Else
sInstallDir = Trim(sInstallDir)
End If

If sAddRemove <> 0 And sAddRemove <> 1 Then
sAddRemove = 1 'Set whether or not VCM Remote appears in the Add/Remove
programs list. 1=display, 0=do not display
End If

If sAddRemove = "" Then
sAddRemove = 1
End If

If IsNumeric(sAddRemove) = False Then
sAddRemove = 1
End If
```

```
sAddRemove = Trim(sAddRemove)
End Sub
```

- c. Select the **Certain file(s) are required to be on the target machine for this remote command** check box.
 - d. Click **Next**.
7. On the Files page, move the `CM Remote Client.msi` file and the `.pem` file to the list on the right, and click **Next**.
 8. On the Important page, review and summary and click **Finish**.
VCM saves and adds the command to **Windows Remote Commands** list.
 9. In the Windows Remote Commands data grid, select your VCM Remote installation remote command and click **Run**.
 10. On the Machines page, select the Windows machines on which you are installing VCM Remote.
 11. On the Schedule page, select when to run the installation and click **Next**.
If you are running the installation command on many Windows machines at one time, schedule the installation for nonpeak network hours.
 12. On the Important page, review the summary to verify the number of target machines and click **Finish**.

What to do next

- Verify that the installation is finished. To view the status of the Install CM Remote Client job, click **Administration** and select **Job Manager > History > Instant Collections**.
- Connect the remote machine to the network to ensure that VCM completes the installation process. See ["Connect VCM Remote Client Machines to the Network" on page 216](#)

Connect VCM Remote Client Machines to the Network

Connect your remote machine to the VCM-managed network to begin managing the machine. The VCM Remote client notifies VCM that the remote machine is on the network and it is processed based on VCM Remote settings and requires no user interaction.

Prerequisites

- Configure the VCM Remote server settings. See ["Configure the VCM Remote Settings" on page 206](#).
- Install the VCM Remote client on target machines. See ["Install the VCM Remote Client" on page 209](#).

Procedure

1. Connect the remote machines to the VCM managed network.

VCM Remote client sends an POST request to the VCM IIS server indicating its presence on the network. The Collector processes the request, auto-licenses the remote machine, installs or upgrades the VCM Windows Agent, and determines whether it should submit a collection job for that remote machine.

What to do next

Review the collected data. See ["VCM Remote Collection Results" on page 217](#).

VCM Remote Collection Results

The VCM Remote client-specific data is limited to administrative details. All other data collected from the remote machine appears in VCM as Windows machine data. See ["Windows Collection Results" on page 85](#).

The displayed data is only as current as the last time you collected from the remote machines.

| Option | Description |
|----------------|--|
| Administration | <p>View administrative details about the VCM Remote client.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ To view the installed Remote client version, click Administration and select Machines Manager > Licensed Machines > Licensed Windows Machines. The Remote Client Version appears in the data grid. <li>■ To view the status of remote collection jobs, click Administration and select Job Manager > History > VCM Remote. |

Tracking Unmanaged Hardware and Software Asset Data

16

VCM management extensions for assets integrates and manages hardware and software asset data that is not gathered through the automated managed machine collection processes of VCM.

- **Hardware:** VCM for assets stores supplemental information (data that is not automatically collected) about physical and virtual machines that are managed by VCM. In addition, VCM for assets stores data about non-managed enterprise equipment such as printers, mobile devices, routers, and so on.
- **Software:** VCM for assets can collect and store information about the software that is installed on physical and virtual machines managed by VCM.

VCM users view the asset data in the VCM Console, where, depending on assigned role, users might also have edit permission.

Configure Asset Data Fields

An administrator must configure VCM for assets so that it includes the columns of data that apply to the hardware and software assets in your environment.

Procedure

1. ["Review Available Asset Data Fields" on page 220](#)
VCM for assets is populated with a short list of data fields to get you started.
2. ["Add an Asset Data Field" on page 220](#)
You can add any data that you want to store and manage about your hardware or software.
3. ["Edit an Asset Data Field" on page 221](#)
Change VCM for assets data fields to keep up with your tracking and management needs for hardware or software.
4. ["Delete a VCM for Assets Data Field" on page 222](#)
Remove asset data fields that do not serve a purpose in your environment.
5. ["Change the Order of Asset Data Columns" on page 222](#)
Changing the order of the VCM for assets data field list changes the order of columns when you view asset data in the VCM Console.
6. ["Refresh Dynamic Asset Data Fields" on page 223](#)
You can force VCM for assets to refresh the values in all fields that are configured to populate dynamically.

Review Available Asset Data Fields

VCM for assets is populated with a short list of data fields to get you started. Examples include hardware data such as location or contact person, and software data such as license expiration date or number of copies.

VCM for assets is configurable, so review the data fields and the order in which they appear. You have the opportunity to add, modify, remove, and rearrange fields.

Prerequisites

- Log in to VCM using an account with the Administrator role.
- Identify the asset data that you want to store about your hardware or software.

Procedure

1. Click **Administration**.
2. Select **Settings > Asset Extensions Settings**.
3. Select one of the following nodes.
 - Hardware Configuration Items > Other Devices**
 - Hardware Configuration Items > VCM Devices**
 - Software Configuration Items**
4. In the data grid, review the names and descriptions.

Each row, in order, becomes a column in the asset data display in the VCM Web Console.

What to do next

Supplement the populated data fields by adding more. See ["Add an Asset Data Field" on page 220](#).

Add an Asset Data Field

You can add any data that you want to store and manage about your hardware or software.

Prerequisites

- Log in to VCM using an account with the Administrator role.
- Identify the asset data that you want to store about your hardware or software.

Procedure

1. Click **Administration**.
2. Select **Settings > Asset Extensions Settings**.
3. Select one of the following nodes.
 - Hardware Configuration Items > Other Devices**
 - Hardware Configuration Items > VCM Devices**
 - Software Configuration Items**
4. Click **Add**.
5. Type a name and description for the new asset data field and click **Next**.

The name is the column heading that appears when users view the data in the VCM Console.

6. Specify properties about the new data.

- a. Select the way to populate the data.

Manually: type free-form text

Lookup: select from a fixed or query-based list of values

Dynamically: query from other data

- b. Select the data type.

For string data, also enter the maximum number of characters to allow.

7. Click **Next**.
8. Configure the way to populate the data based on your earlier selection.
 - **Manually:** No configuration steps are needed. The user types the data at runtime.
 - **Lookup, fixed:** Create the fixed list by typing values and clicking **Add**. When finished, click **Next**.
 - **Lookup, query-based:** Type the SQL query that populates the list from which to select values, and click **Next**.
 - **Dynamic:** Type the SQL query that pulls the value from another data source, and click **Next**.
9. Select the roles that are allowed to edit the data.

Only users assigned to these roles can edit the data using the VCM Console.
10. Review the settings and click **Finish**.

What to do next

Modify fields that need to be adapted for your site. See ["Edit an Asset Data Field" on page 221](#).

Edit an Asset Data Field

Change VCM for assets data fields to keep up with your tracking and management needs for hardware or software.

Prerequisites

- Log in to VCM using an account with the Administrator role.
- Identify the asset data that you want to store about your hardware or software.

Procedure

1. Click **Administration**.
2. Select **Settings > Asset Extensions Settings**.
3. Select one of the following nodes.
 - Hardware Configuration Items > Other Devices**
 - Hardware Configuration Items > VCM Devices**
 - Software Configuration Items**
4. In the data grid, select the row.
5. Click **Edit**.
6. Change the name or description for the data field and click **Next**.

The name is the column heading that appears when users view the data in the VCM Console.

7. Click **Next**.

You cannot change the data properties.

8. Click **Next**.
9. Select the roles that are allowed to edit the data.

Only users assigned to these roles can edit the data using the VCM Console.

10. Review the settings and click **Finish**.

What to do next

Remove unwanted fields. See ["Delete a VCM for Assets Data Field" on page 222](#).

Delete a VCM for Assets Data Field

Remove asset data fields that do not serve a purpose in your environment.

Prerequisites

- Log in to VCM using an account with the Administrator role.
- Identify the asset data that you want to store about your hardware or software.

Procedure

1. Click **Administration**.
2. Select **Settings > Asset Extensions Settings**.
3. Select one of the following nodes.

Hardware Configuration Items > Other Devices

Hardware Configuration Items > VCM Devices

Software Configuration Items

4. In the data grid, select the row.
5. Click **Delete**.

You cannot delete entries that are marked with a lock icon.

6. Click **OK**.

What to do next

Rearrange asset data fields so that the order of columns shown in the VCM Console meets your requirements. See ["Change the Order of Asset Data Columns" on page 222](#).

Change the Order of Asset Data Columns

Changing the order of the VCM for assets data field list changes the order of columns when you view asset data in the VCM Console.

Prerequisites

- Log in to VCM using an account with the Administrator role.
- Identify the asset data that you want to store about your hardware or software.

Procedure

1. Click **Administration**.
2. Select **Settings > Asset Extensions Settings**.
3. Select one of the following nodes.

Hardware Configuration Items > Other Devices

Hardware Configuration Items > VCM Devices

Software Configuration Items

In the data grid, each row, in order, becomes a column in the asset data display in the VCM Console.

4. Click **Column Order**.
5. Select entries, use the arrow buttons to move rows up or down, and click **Next**.
6. Review the rearranged order and click **Finish**.

What to do next

Refresh the values in dynamically generated fields. See ["Refresh Dynamic Asset Data Fields" on page 223](#).

Refresh Dynamic Asset Data Fields

You can force VCM for assets to refresh the values in all fields that are configured to populate dynamically.

Prerequisites

Log in to VCM using an account with the Administrator role.

Procedure

1. Click **Administration**.
2. Select **Settings > Asset Extensions Settings**.
3. Select one of the following nodes.

Hardware Configuration Items > Other Devices

Hardware Configuration Items > VCM Devices

Software Configuration Items

4. Click **Refresh Dynamic Fields**.

The option recalculates and overwrites all dynamic data fields listed and might take time to finish.

5. Click **OK**.

What to do next

Enter data for machines that are managed by VCM. See ["Configure Asset Data Values for VCM Machines" on page 223](#).

Configure Asset Data Values for VCM Machines

Although the asset data for machines that are managed by VCM is collected, you can customize some data through VCM for assets.

Prerequisites

Log in to VCM with a role that has edit permission for asset configuration data.

Procedure

1. Click **Console**.
2. Select **Asset Extensions > Hardware Configuration Items > VCM Devices**.
3. In the data grid, select the VCM machine.
4. Click **Edit Values**.
5. Verify that the machine you want is in the Selected list and click **Next**.
Use the arrow buttons to move entries to or from the Selected list.
6. Move the data fields that you want to edit into the Selected list and click **Next**.
Use the arrow buttons to move entries to or from the Selected list.
7. Select or type the new values and click **Next**.
8. Review the new values and click **Finish**.

What to do next

Enter data for hardware that is not managed by VCM, such as printers, mobile devices, routers, and so on. See ["Configure Asset Data for Other Hardware Devices" on page 224](#).

Configure Asset Data for Other Hardware Devices

A user with a role that has permission to edit asset data can populate VCM for assets with the hardware devices in your environment that are not discovered and managed by VCM.

Procedure

- ["Add Other Hardware Devices" on page 224](#)
Use VCM for assets to keep track of your non-VCM managed hardware by adding information about the hardware devices directly to VCM.
- ["Add Multiple Similar Other Hardware Devices" on page 225](#)
If your site has many nearly identical devices, you can use VCM for assets to clone one copy as a way to quickly add records for the other devices.
- ["Edit Asset Data for Other Hardware Devices" on page 225](#)
Use VCM for assets to change your hardware asset records as your enterprise changes.
- ["Edit Asset Data Values for Other Hardware Devices" on page 226](#)
You can change only the details about a given piece of equipment when the long term information, such as the model name or number, is going to remain the same.
- ["Delete Other Hardware Devices" on page 226](#)
Use VCM for assets to delete the records of hardware devices that are no longer a part of your site.

Add Other Hardware Devices

Use VCM for assets to keep track of your non-VCM managed hardware by adding information about the hardware devices directly to VCM.

Prerequisites

- Have an administrator configure the asset data fields that you need. See "[Configure Asset Data Fields](#)" on page 219.
- Log in to VCM with a role that has edit permission for asset configuration data.

Procedure

1. Click **Console**.
2. Select **Asset Extensions > Hardware Configuration Items > Other Devices**.
3. Click **Add**.
4. Select or type the details that identify the device, such as its name and model, and click **Next**.
5. Select or type the values for the asset data associated with the device and click **Next**.

The fields can vary depending on how the administrator configured your data for other hardware devices.

6. Click **Finish**.

Add Multiple Similar Other Hardware Devices

If your site has many nearly identical devices, you can use VCM for assets to clone one copy as a way to quickly add records for the other devices.

Prerequisites

- Log in to VCM with a role that has edit permission for asset configuration data.
- Create at least one copy of the device to serve as a baseline. See "[Add Other Hardware Devices](#)" on page 224.

Procedure

1. Click **Console**.
2. Select **Asset Extensions > Hardware Configuration Items > Other Devices**.
3. In the data grid, select the original, baseline asset.
4. Click **Clone**.
5. Modify the details to reflect the new copy of the asset and click **Next**.
You must change at least the name.
6. Modify the values to reflect the asset data associated with the new device and click **Next**.
7. Click **Finish**.

Edit Asset Data for Other Hardware Devices

Use VCM for assets to change your hardware asset records as your enterprise changes.

Prerequisites

Log in to VCM with a role that has edit permission for asset configuration data.

Procedure

1. Click **Console**.
2. Select **Asset Extensions > Hardware Configuration Items > Other Devices**.
3. In the data grid, select the asset.
4. Click **Edit**.
5. Change the details that identify the device, such as its name and model, and click **Next**.
6. Change the values for the asset data associated with the device and click **Next**.

The fields can vary depending on how the administrator configured your data for other hardware devices.

7. Click **Finish**.

Edit Asset Data Values for Other Hardware Devices

You can change only the details about a given piece of equipment when the long term information, such as the model name or number, is going to remain the same.

Prerequisites

Log in to VCM with a role that has edit permission for asset configuration data.

Procedure

1. Click **Console**.
2. Select **Asset Extensions > Hardware Configuration Items > Other Devices**.
3. In the data grid, select the asset.
4. Click **Edit Values**.
5. Move the data fields that you want to edit into the Selected list and click **Next**.

Use the arrow buttons to move entries to or from the Selected list.

6. Select or type the new values and click **Next**.
7. Review the new values and click **Finish**.

Delete Other Hardware Devices

Use VCM for assets to delete the records of hardware devices that are no longer a part of your site.

Prerequisites

Log in to VCM with a role that has edit permission for asset configuration data.

Procedure

1. Click **Console**.
2. Select **Asset Extensions > Hardware Configuration Items > Other Devices**.
3. In the data grid, select the asset.
4. Click **Delete**.
5. Click **OK**.

Configure Asset Data for Software

A user with a role that has permission to edit asset data can use VCM for assets to gather information about the software on machines that are discovered and managed by VCM.

Procedure

- ["Add Software Assets" on page 227](#)

Manage your software assets by having VCM for assets detect what is installed on the physical and virtual machines in your environment.

- ["Add Multiple Similar Software Assets" on page 228](#)

If your environment has many nearly identical copies of software, such as the same application with a different license number, you can use VCM for assets to clone one copy as a way to quickly add records for the others.

- ["Edit Asset Data for Software" on page 229](#)

Use VCM for assets to change your software asset records as your enterprise changes.

- ["Edit Asset Data Values for Software" on page 229](#)

You can change the details about a specific copy of software when the long term information, such as the application name or version, is going to remain the same.

- ["Delete Software Data" on page 230](#)

xUse VCM for assets to delete entries for software that is no longer installed at your site.

Add Software Assets

Manage your software assets by having VCM for assets detect what is installed on the physical and virtual machines in your environment.

Prerequisites

- Have an administrator configure the asset data fields that you need. See ["Configure Asset Data Fields" on page 219](#).
- Log in to VCM with a role that has edit permission for asset configuration data.

Procedure

1. Click **Console**.
2. Select **Asset Extensions > Software Configuration Items**.
3. Click **Add Software**.
4. Type a name and description and click **Next**.
5. Select the data type that VCM for assets will look for to detect the installed software and click **Next**.

The options take you to custom wizard pages where you type or select what VCM for assets will look for in the database.

- **Software Inventory (Windows):** Select a product from the software inventory (SI) list.
 - **Registry (Windows):** Type or select a Windows Registry path, key, and value.
 - **File System - Known Files (Windows):** Type or select a filename and version.
 - **Software Inventory - Packages (UNIX):** Select a product from the SI list.
 - **Software Inventory - Utilities (UNIX):** Select a product from the SI list.
 - **File System - Known Files (UNIX):** Type or select a filename.
6. Click **Next**.
 7. Select or type the values for the asset data associated with the software and click **Next**.
The fields can vary depending on how the administrator configured your data for software.
 8. Click **Finish**.

Add Multiple Similar Software Assets

If your environment has many nearly identical copies of software, such as the same application with a different license number, you can use VCM for assets to clone one copy as a way to quickly add records for the others.

Prerequisites

- Log in to VCM with a role that has edit permission for asset configuration data.
- Create at least one copy of the software to serve as a baseline. See ["Add Software Assets" on page 227](#).

Procedure

1. Click **Console**.
2. Select **Asset Extensions > Software Configuration Items**.
3. In the data grid, select the original, baseline software asset.
4. Click **Clone**.
5. Modify the details to reflect the new copy of the software asset and click **Next**.
You must change at least the name.
6. Change the data type that VCM for assets will look for to detect the installed software and click **Next**.
The options take you to custom wizard pages where you type or select what VCM for assets will look for in the database.
 - **Software Inventory (Windows):** Select a product from the software inventory (SI) list.
 - **Registry (Windows):** Type or select a Windows Registry path, key, and value.
 - **File System - Known Files (Windows):** Type or select a filename and version.
 - **Software Inventory - Packages (UNIX):** Select a product from the SI list.
 - **Software Inventory - Utilities (UNIX):** Select a product from the SI list.
 - **File System - Known Files (UNIX):** Type or select a filename.
7. Click **Next**.
8. Modify the asset data values to reflect the new software and click **Next**.
9. Click **Finish**.

Edit Asset Data for Software

Use VCM for assets to change your software asset records as your enterprise changes.

Prerequisites

Log in to VCM with a role that has edit permission for asset configuration data.

Procedure

1. Click **Console**.
2. Select **Asset Extensions > Software Configuration Items**.
3. In the data grid, select the software asset.
4. Click **Edit**.
5. Change the name or description and click **Next**.
6. Change the data type that VCM for assets will look for to detect the installed software and click **Next**.

The options take you to custom wizard pages where you type or select what VCM for assets will look for in the database.

- **Software Inventory (Windows):** Select a product from the software inventory (SI) list.
- **Registry (Windows):** Type or select a Windows Registry path, key, and value.
- **File System - Known Files (Windows):** Type or select a filename and version.
- **Software Inventory - Packages (UNIX):** Select a product from the SI list.
- **Software Inventory - Utilities (UNIX):** Select a product from the SI list.
- **File System - Known Files (UNIX):** Type or select a filename.

7. Click **Next**.
8. Change the values for the asset data associated with the software and click **Next**.
The fields can vary depending on how the administrator configured your data for software.
9. Click **Finish**.

Edit Asset Data Values for Software

You can change the details about a specific copy of software when the long term information, such as the application name or version, is going to remain the same.

Prerequisites

Log in to VCM with a role that has edit permission for asset configuration data.

Procedure

1. Click **Console**.
2. Select **Asset Extensions > Software Configuration Items**.
3. In the data grid, select the software asset.
4. Click **Edit Values**.
5. Move the data fields that you want to edit into the Selected list and click **Next**.
Use the arrow buttons to move entries to or from the Selected list.
6. Select or type the new values and click **Next**.
7. Review the new values and click **Finish**.

Delete Software Data

Use VCM for assets to delete entries for software that is no longer installed at your site.

Prerequisites

Log in to VCM with a role that has edit permission for asset configuration data.

Procedure

1. Click **Console**.
2. Select **Asset Extensions > Software Configuration Items**.
3. In the data grid, select the software asset.
4. Click **Delete**.
5. Click **OK**.

Managing Changes with Service Desk Integration

17

VCM Service Desk Integration tracks planned and unplanned changes to managed machines in your organization, and integrates change requests with your change management process.

Service Desk Integration works by temporarily holding requested changes to managed machines while VCM integrates with your service desk application in order to pass the requests through your change management process or workflow. After the changes are approved, VCM resumes changing the managed machines, in order of criticality.

VCM Service Desk Connector links VCM with the service desk application in order to track and manage the VCM initiated changes. Change management process and workflow definitions vary by customer and depend on the configuration implemented during your VMware services engagement.

Configure Service Desk Integration

To add the Service Desk Integration feature to VCM, you must complete the following high-level tasks.

Procedure

1. Contact VMware Customer Support to determine the requirements for your integration and arrange for a VMware services engagement.
2. License Service Desk Integration.
3. Activate Service Desk Integration

After VMware Customer Support assists you with licensing and the integration of VCM with your service desk application, additional nodes that are unique to the service desk feature appear in VCM.

What to do next

Look at your service desk data. See ["View Service Desk Integration in the Console" on page 231](#).

View Service Desk Integration in the Console

When service desk integration is enabled, the Service Desk data grids provide a detailed view of VCM-related service desk events.

Procedure

1. Click **Console**.
2. Select **Service Desk**.
3. Under the Service Desk node, select any subnode.

For example, click **By RFC** to view the data according to request for change (RFC). Under the By RFC sub-node, select an RFC to view the data for that item.

Your subnodes and data views might differ from the defaults or from other organizations based on your requirements and specific implementation.

What to do next

Look at the status of change jobs. See ["View Service Desk Integration in Job Manager" on page 232](#).

View Service Desk Integration in Job Manager

VCM Service Desk Integration pauses requested changes to managed machines while VCM integrates with your service desk application to pass the request through your change management process.

Procedure

1. Click **Administration**.
2. Select **Job Manager > Pending Response**.

After the job is approved, it is released to run immediately or at a scheduled time.

3. Select **Job Manager > Running**.

Alternately, select **Job Manager > Scheduled**.

NOTE Patching jobs are in a different location. Locate patching jobs by clicking **Patching** and selecting **VCM Patching Administration > {operating-system} > Job Manager**.

Index

| | | |
|-------------------------------------|-----------------|-----------------|
| % | | |
| %Systemroot% environment variable | 79, 81 | |
| A | | |
| About Patching | 135 | |
| about this book | 9 | |
| access by user | 11 | |
| accessing | | |
| compliance content | 21 | |
| active directory | | |
| (AD) | 193 | |
| collection results | 202 | |
| configuration | 199 | |
| data collection | 201 | |
| getting started | 193 | |
| installing VCM for active directory | 199 | |
| run determine forest action | 200 | |
| run domain controller setup action | 201 | |
| AD (active directory) | 193 | |
| add | | |
| vCenter Server | 30 | |
| vCloud Director | 35 | |
| vShield Manager | 45 | |
| add servers | | |
| provisioning, operating system | 160 | |
| adding | | |
| asset data field | 220 | |
| hardware asset data | 224 | |
| Mac OS X | 125 | |
| multiple hardware asset data | 225 | |
| multiple software asset data | 228 | |
| Oracle Instances | 118, 120 | |
| repository sources | 185 | |
| service desk integration | 231 | |
| software asset data | 227 | |
| UNIX/Linux machines | 108 | |
| ADProductInstall.exe for Windows | 79, 81 | |
| agent | | |
| ADProductInstall.exe for Windows AD | 79, 81 | |
| CMAgentInstall.exe for Windows | 79, 81 | |
| install, manual | 78 | |
| install, Windows | 77 | |
| installation | 77 | |
| installing Mac OS X | 127 | |
| Linux and UNIX | 109 | |
| remote client | 208 | |
| uninstall, Mac OS X | 132 | |
| uninstall, UNIX/Linux | 115 | |
| uninstalling | 83 | |
| agent communication | | |
| changing after OS provisioning | 171 | |
| agent proxy | | |
| collector | | 49 |
| assessment | | |
| SCAP | | 154-155 |
| assets | | |
| adding data field | | 220 |
| adding hardware data | | 224 |
| adding multiple hardware data | | 225 |
| adding multiple software data | | 228 |
| adding software data | | 227 |
| configuring data fields | | 219 |
| configuring hardware data | | 224 |
| configuring software data | | 227 |
| deleting data field | | 222 |
| deleting hardware data | | 226 |
| deleting software data | | 230 |
| editing hardware data | | 225 |
| editing hardware data values | | 226 |
| editing software data | | 229 |
| editing software data values | | 229 |
| editing data field | | 221 |
| getting started | | 219 |
| rearranging data fields | | 222 |
| refreshing dynamic data field | | 223 |
| reviewing data field | | 220 |
| VCM asset data | | 223 |
| assigning | | |
| network authority account | | 73 |
| auditing | | 69 |
| available domains | | |
| domain controllers | | 194 |
| B | | |
| binary mode, use for ftp | | 110, 127 |
| C | | |
| certificates | | |
| remote client | | 206 |
| change management | | |
| WCI | | 97 |
| check | | |
| for UNIX/Linux updates | | 146 |
| for Windows updates | | 139 |
| checking | | |
| network authority account | | 72, 194 |
| CMAgentInstall.exe | | |
| for Windows | | 79, 81 |
| uninstalling agent | | 83 |

| | | | |
|--------------------------------------|--|-----------------|--|
| collect | | | |
| domain controllers | | 198 | |
| ESX logs | | 48, 53 | |
| ESX service console operating system | | 48 | |
| hosts, virtual machine | | 50 | |
| package managers | | 183 | |
| repositories | | 184 | |
| vCenter Server | | 32 | |
| vCenter Server virtual machines | | 33 | |
| vCloud Director | | 35, 37 | |
| vCloud Director vApp | | 39 | |
| virtual machine hosts | | 50 | |
| vShield Manager | | 45, 47 | |
| collect distributions | | | |
| provisioning, operating system | | 161 | |
| collecting | | | |
| WCI data | | 98 | |
| collection filter for WCI | | 101 | |
| collection results | | | |
| active directory | | 202 | |
| Oracle | | 124 | |
| Remote | | 217 | |
| UNIX/Linux | | 116 | |
| WCI | | 103 | |
| collection scripts | | | |
| custom for WCI | | 99 | |
| collection user account | | | |
| creating, Config User Action | | 121 | |
| collections | | | |
| active directory | | 201 | |
| domain controllers | | 198 | |
| Mac OS X | | 132 | |
| Oracle | | 123 | |
| patching | | 139 | |
| results, Mac OS X | | 133 | |
| UNIX/Linux | | 116 | |
| vCenter Server data | | 30, 33 | |
| virtualization | | 53 | |
| WCI | | 101 | |
| Windows machines | | 84 | |
| collector | | | |
| agent proxy | | 49 | |
| aware of Remote client | | 206, 216 | |
| install before agents | | 110, 127 | |
| lock request | | 80 | |
| compliance | | | |
| checking, UNIX/Linux | | 116 | |
| content, accessing | | 21 | |
| Mac OS X | | 133 | |
| software provisioning | | 189-190 | |
| compliance exceptions | | | |
| vCenter Server | | 64 | |
| vCloud Director | | 64 | |
| virtual objects | | 64 | |
| compliance filters | | | |
| vCenter Server | | 61 | |
| vCloud Director | | 61 | |
| virtual objects | | 61 | |
| compliance rule groups | | | |
| preview | | 62 | |
| vCenter Server | | 60 | |
| vCloud Director | | 60 | |
| virtual objects | | 60 | |
| compliance rules | | | |
| vCenter Server | | 60 | |
| vCloud Director | | 60 | |
| virtual objects | | 60 | |
| compliance templates | | | |
| vCenter Server | | 59, 63 | |
| vCloud Director | | 59, 63 | |
| virtual objects | | 59, 63 | |
| configuration | | | |
| Active Directory | | 199 | |
| configuring | | | |
| asset data field | | 219 | |
| hardware data | | 224 | |
| software data | | 227 | |
| vSphere Client Plug-in | | 55 | |
| console | | | |
| service desk integration | | 231 | |
| content for compliance | | 21 | |
| wizard | | 20 | |
| copying | | | |
| files to ESX/vSphere servers | | 51 | |
| create packages | | | |
| software provisioning | | 181 | |
| creating | | | |
| Oracle collection user account | | 121 | |
| CSI_AGENT_RUN_OPTION | | 110, 127 | |
| custom filter sets | | | |
| for Remote | | 207 | |
| remote client | | 208 | |
| D | | | |
| deleting | | | |
| asset data field | | 222 | |
| hardware asset data | | 226 | |
| software asset data | | 230 | |
| deploy | | | |
| patching | | 150 | |
| deploying | | | |
| patches, UNIX/Linux | | 150 | |
| patches, Windows machines | | 144 | |
| determine forest action | | | |
| running for active directory | | 200 | |
| develop | | | |
| custom collection scripts | | 99 | |
| disabling | | | |
| UAC on Windows machines | | 75 | |
| discover | | | |
| domain controllers | | 195 | |
| vCloud Director vApp | | 41 | |
| discovering | | | |
| domain controllers | | 193, 195 | |
| Oracle Instances | | 118 | |
| Windows machines | | 71, 73 | |

| | | |
|---|---------------|---------------------|
| discovery | | |
| provisioning, operating system | 161 | |
| domain controllers | | |
| add network authority | 194 | |
| assign network authority | 195 | |
| available domains | 194 | |
| collect | 198 | |
| collecting | 198 | |
| discover | 195 | |
| discover, license, install | 193 | |
| discovering | 195 | |
| domain discovery | 194 | |
| license | 196 | |
| licensing | 196 | |
| run setup action | 201 | |
| domain discovery | | |
| domain controllers | 194 | |
| Windows machines | 72 | |
| domains | | |
| active directory | 193 | |
| download settings | | |
| patch assessment content | 138 | |
| E | | |
| editing | | |
| asset data field | 221 | |
| hardware asset data | 225 | |
| hardware asset data values | 226 | |
| software asset data | 229 | |
| software asset data values | 229 | |
| VCM asset data | 223 | |
| enabling | | |
| UAC on Windows machines | 83 | |
| environment variable, %Systemroot% | 79, 81 | |
| ESX | | |
| collect | 50 | |
| service console operating system collection | 48 | |
| ESX files | | |
| copy | 51 | |
| ESX logs | | |
| collect | 48, 53 | |
| example PowerShell script | 92 | |
| exploring | | |
| assessment results, UNIX | 148 | |
| assessment results, Windows | 141 | |
| Remote collection results | 217 | |
| exporting | | |
| SCAP assessment | 156 | |
| F | | |
| filter for WCI collections | 101 | |
| filter sets | | |
| Remote | 207 | |
| remove client | 207 | |
| forest | | |
| run determine forest action | 200 | |
| forests | | |
| active directory | 193 | |
| foundation checker | | 19 |
| installation | | 22 |
| ftp, use binary mode | | 110, 127 |
| G | | |
| getting started | | |
| active directory | | 193 |
| assets | | 219 |
| auditing | | 69 |
| deploy patches, UNIX/Linux | | 150 |
| deploy patches, Windows | | 144 |
| explore assessment results, UNIX | | 148 |
| explore assessment results, Windows | | 141 |
| launch assessment | | 140 |
| launching | | 12 |
| logging on | | 12 |
| patching collection | | 139 |
| remote client | | 205 |
| tools | | 19 |
| Using Patching | | 138 |
| virtualization | | 23 |
| vSphere Client Plug-in | | 56 |
| WCI | | 86 |
| WCI PowerShell scripts | | 88 |
| H | | |
| host files | | |
| remote client | | 208 |
| hosts | | |
| collect | | 50 |
| HTTP agent, port number | | 80 |
| I | | |
| import/export wizard | | 20 |
| importing | | |
| SCAP benchmark | | 154 |
| information bar in portal | | 13 |
| install package manager | | |
| software provisioning | | 180 |
| install package studio | | |
| software provisioning | | 178 |
| install repository | | |
| software provisioning | | 177 |
| installation | | |
| agent on Mac OS X machines | | 127 |
| agent on Red Hat, SUSE | | 110 |
| agent on UNIX/Linux machines | | 109 |
| agent on Windows machines | | 77-78 |
| agent, UNIX | | 110, 128 |
| foundation checker | | 22 |
| tools | | 19 |
| Windows machines | | 71, 193 |
| InstallICMAgent | | 112, 128 |
| installing | | |
| Package Studio | | 178 |
| packages | | 186 |
| PowerShell | | 100 |
| remote client | | 210-211, 213 |
| repositories | | 177 |

| | | | |
|---------------------------------------|----------|---------------------------------------|----------|
| software provisioning | 176 | network authority account | |
| VCM for active directory | 199 | assigning | 73 |
| integration | | checking | 72, 194 |
| service desk | 231 | network authority, add | |
| invalid certificate in vSphere Client | | domain controllers | 194 |
| troubleshooting | 57 | network authority, assign | |
| | | domain controllers | 195 |
| J | | O | |
| job manager | 19 | operating system | |
| service desk integration | 232 | virtual machine | 34 |
| job status reporting | | operating system provisioning | 157 |
| WCI | 102 | Oracle | |
| jobs history | | 10g installations | 122 |
| provisioning | 188 | Add/Edit Instance | 117 |
| | | adding instances | 118, 120 |
| L | | collection results | 124 |
| launch an assessment | 140 | collection user account | 122 |
| license | | collections | 123 |
| domain controllers | 196 | Config User Action | 121 |
| licensing | | discovering instances | 118 |
| domain controllers | 193, 196 | permissions | 122 |
| Mac OS X | 126 | Oracle 10g | |
| UNIX/Linux machines | 109 | user account | 122 |
| Windows machines | 71, 74 | overview | |
| Linux and UNIX | | SCAP | 153 |
| install agent | 109 | vSphere Client Plug-in | 54 |
| patching | 146-147 | | |
| patching filters | 148 | P | |
| upgrade | 107 | package managers | |
| lock request, submit from collector | 80 | collect | 183 |
| logs | | Package Studio | |
| ESX | 53 | installing | 178 |
| | | packages | |
| M | | installing | 186 |
| Mac OS X | | patch assessment content architecture | |
| adding | 125 | download settings | 138 |
| agent installation | 127 | repository | 138 |
| agent, uninstall | 132 | patching | 138 |
| collection | 132 | check for updates, UNIX/Linux | 146 |
| collection results | 133 | check for updates, Windows | 139 |
| licensing | 126 | collect, Linux and UNIX | 147 |
| managing agent | | collection | 139 |
| virtual environments | 26 | deploy | 150 |
| managing agent collection | | filters, Linux and UNIX | 148 |
| virtual environments | 27 | new UNIX patch assessment content | 137 |
| managing agent enabled | | prerequisites | 141 |
| virtual environments | 28 | reports | 151 |
| managing agent HTTPS bypass | | UNIX and Linux | 146 |
| virtual environments | 28 | permissions | |
| managing agent trust status | | Oracle | 122 |
| virtual environments | 27 | port number for HTTP agent install | 80 |
| managing agent;SSL thumbprint | 29 | port number for UNIX agent install | 113, 130 |
| | | portal | |
| N | | familiarizing | 13 |
| NAT | | information bar | 13 |
| see network address translation | 39 | sliders | 15 |
| network address translation | | toolbar | 14 |
| vCloud Director vApp | 39 | | |

| | | | |
|---|--|-----------------|--|
| PowerShell | | | |
| example script | | 92 | |
| executing for WCI | | 92 | |
| installation | | 100 | |
| references | | 92 | |
| script signing policies | | 91 | |
| scripts, troubleshooting | | 104 | |
| signing scripts for WCI | | 92 | |
| WCI getting started | | 88 | |
| Windows Custom Info | | 101 | |
| PowerShell script | | | |
| verifying | | 99 | |
| prerequisites | | | |
| patching deployment | | 141 | |
| preview | | | |
| compliance rule groups | | 62 | |
| Product Overview | | 135 | |
| provision machines | | | |
| operating systems | | 162, 165 | |
| provisioning | | | |
| compliance | | 190 | |
| compliance rule | | 189 | |
| jobs History | | 188 | |
| provisioning, operating system | | 157 | |
| add servers | | 160 | |
| agent communication | | 171 | |
| collect distributions | | 161 | |
| components | | 157 | |
| discovery | | 161 | |
| provision machines | | 162, 165 | |
| re-provision machines | | 172 | |
| results | | 171 | |
| servers | | 159 | |
| set server trust status | | 160 | |
| time, Linux | | 170 | |
| workflow | | 158 | |
| provisioning, software | | 175, 183 | |
| create packages | | 181 | |
| install package manager | | 180 | |
| install package studio | | 178 | |
| install repository | | 177 | |
| installation | | 176 | |
| purge | | | |
| for WCI | | 101 | |
| R | | | |
| re-provisioning machines | | | |
| operating systems | | 172 | |
| rearranging | | | |
| asset data fields | | 222 | |
| Red Hat | | | |
| install UNIX agent | | 110 | |
| refreshing | | | |
| dynamic asset data field | | 223 | |
| registering | | | |
| vSphere Client Plug-in | | 54 | |
| remediation | | | |
| compliance rule | | 190 | |
| Remote | | | |
| collection results | | 217 | |
| filter sets | | 207 | |
| settings | | 206 | |
| remote client | | | |
| certificates | | 206 | |
| collector aware | | 206, 216 | |
| configure VCM remote | | 205 | |
| getting started | | 205 | |
| installation | | 209 | |
| installation, command line | | 211 | |
| installation, manual | | 210 | |
| installation, remote commands | | 213 | |
| network | | 216 | |
| settings | | 206 | |
| settings, custom filter sets | | 208 | |
| settings, filter sets | | 207 | |
| settings, host files | | 208 | |
| reports | | | |
| patching | | 151 | |
| WCI | | 104 | |
| repositories | | | |
| collect | | 184 | |
| installing | | 177 | |
| repository for patch assessment content | | 138 | |
| repository sources | | | |
| adding | | 185 | |
| results | | | |
| collection, active directory | | 202 | |
| collection, Mac OS X | | 133 | |
| ESX logs | | 53 | |
| provisioning, operating system | | 171 | |
| SCAP | | 155 | |
| vCloud Director | | 38 | |
| virtualization | | 53 | |
| vShield Manager | | 48 | |
| reviewing | | | |
| asset data field | | 220 | |
| run compliance | | | |
| vCenter Server | | 64 | |
| vCloud Director | | 64 | |
| virtual objects | | 64 | |
| running | | | |
| determine forest action | | 200 | |
| domain controller setup | | 201 | |
| S | | | |
| SCAP | | | |
| assessment | | 154-156 | |
| benchmark | | 154 | |
| exporting assessment | | 156 | |
| importing benchmark | | 154 | |
| overview | | 153 | |
| results | | 155 | |
| script | | | |
| verify validity | | 99 | |
| script-based collection filter | | 101 | |

| | | | |
|--|----------|--|--|
| script signing | | | |
| policies | 91 | | |
| references | 92 | | |
| scripts | | | |
| PowerShell | 88 | | |
| service desk integration | 231 | | |
| adding | 231 | | |
| console | 231 | | |
| job manager | 232 | | |
| set server trust status | | | |
| provisioning, operating system | 160 | | |
| settings | | | |
| remote | 206 | | |
| vCloud Director | 36 | | |
| vShield Manager | 46 | | |
| setup action | | | |
| running for active directory | 201 | | |
| signing | | | |
| policies, PowerShell scripts | 91 | | |
| PowerShell scripts | 92 | | |
| sliders | | | |
| in portal | 15 | | |
| software provisioning | 175, 183 | | |
| create packages | 181 | | |
| install package manager | 180 | | |
| install package studio | 178 | | |
| install repository | 177 | | |
| installation | 176 | | |
| sources | | | |
| repository sources | 185 | | |
| SQL*Plus | | | |
| Oracle | 122 | | |
| SSL thumbprint | | | |
| managing agent | 29 | | |
| SUSE | | | |
| install UNIX agent | 110 | | |
| T | | | |
| time | | | |
| provisioning, Linux operating system | | | |
| Linux | 170 | | |
| ToCMBase64String | 88 | | |
| toolbar | | | |
| in portal | 14 | | |
| tools | | | |
| foundation checker | 19 | | |
| getting started | 19 | | |
| import/export, content | 19 | | |
| installation | 19 | | |
| job manager | 19 | | |
| troubleshooting | | | |
| PowerShell scripts | 104 | | |
| vSphere client integration | 57 | | |
| U | | | |
| UAC | | | |
| disabling on Windows machines | 75 | | |
| enabling on Windows machines | 83 | | |
| uninstall | | | |
| agent | 83 | | |
| agent, Mac OS X | 132 | | |
| agent, UNIX/Linux | 115 | | |
| UNIX agent | | | |
| port number | 113, 130 | | |
| UNIX and Linux | | | |
| install agent | 109 | | |
| patching | 146-147 | | |
| patching filters | 148 | | |
| upgrade | 107 | | |
| UNIX patch assessment content | 137 | | |
| UNIX patch assessment content repository | 138 | | |
| UNIX patch content download | 138 | | |
| UNIX/Linux | | | |
| agent uninstall | 115 | | |
| check for updates | 146 | | |
| collections | 116 | | |
| machines, adding | 108 | | |
| machines, licensing | 109 | | |
| updates | | | |
| check for UNIX/Linux | 146 | | |
| check for Windows | 139 | | |
| upgrade | | | |
| Linux and UNIX | 107 | | |
| user access | 11 | | |
| V | | | |
| vCenter Server | 23 | | |
| add | 30 | | |
| collect | 32 | | |
| compliance exceptions | 64 | | |
| compliance filters | 61 | | |
| compliance rule groups | 60 | | |
| compliance rules | 60 | | |
| compliance templates | 59, 63 | | |
| data collections | 30 | | |
| run compliance | 64 | | |
| vCenter Server virtual machines | | | |
| collect | 33 | | |
| vCloud Director | | | |
| add | 35 | | |
| collect | 35, 37 | | |
| collection results | 38 | | |
| compliance exceptions | 64 | | |
| compliance filters | 61 | | |
| compliance rule groups | 60 | | |
| compliance rules | 60 | | |
| compliance templates | 59, 63 | | |
| run compliance | 64 | | |
| settings | 36 | | |
| vApp collection | 39 | | |
| vApp network address translation | 39 | | |
| vCloud Director vApp | | | |
| discover | 41 | | |
| VCM actions tab; troubleshooting | 57 | | |
| VCM asset data | | | |
| editing | 223 | | |

| | | | |
|--|--------|----------------------------------|-----|
| VCM Summary and VCM Action troubleshooting | 57 | purge | 101 |
| VCM summary tab troubleshooting | 57 | running reports | 104 |
| verify PowerShell script | 99 | verify PowerShell script | 99 |
| virtual environments managing agent | 29 | Windows | |
| virtual environments managing agent | 26 | check for updates | 139 |
| virtual environments managing agent collection | 27 | Windows Custom Information (WCI) | 86 |
| virtual environments managing agent enabled | 28 | Windows machines | |
| virtual environments managing agent HTTPS bypass | 28 | collecting | 84 |
| virtual environments managing agent trust status | 27 | disabling UAC | 75 |
| virtual machine manage operating system | 34 | discover, license, install | 71 |
| virtual machines vCloud Director vApp | 39 | discovering | 73 |
| virtual objects compliance exceptions | 64 | domain discovery | 72 |
| virtual objects compliance filters | 61 | enabling UAC | 83 |
| virtual objects compliance rule groups | 60 | install agent | 77 |
| virtual objects compliance rules | 60 | licensing | 74 |
| virtual objects compliance templates | 59, 63 | uninstalling agent | 83 |
| virtual objects run compliance | 64 | wizards | |
| virtualization collecting | | content | 20 |
| results | 53 | import/export | 20 |
| collections | 53 | | |
| getting started | 23 | | |
| vShield Manager add | 45 | | |
| collect | 45, 47 | | |
| collection results | 48 | | |
| settings | 46 | | |
| vSphere Client Plug-in configuring | 55 | | |
| getting started | 56 | | |
| overview | 54 | | |
| registering | 54 | | |
| W | | | |
| WCI | | | |
| challenges CDATA | 91 | | |
| challenges in column names | 90 | | |
| challenges in scripting | 89 | | |
| challenges in task entries | 90 | | |
| change management | 97 | | |
| collecting data | 98 | | |
| collection | 101 | | |
| collection filter | 101 | | |
| collection results | 103 | | |
| custom collection scripts | 99 | | |
| executing PowerShell scripts | 92 | | |
| getting started | 86 | | |
| guidelines in scripting | 88 | | |
| job status reporting | 102 | | |
| prerequisites to collect | 87 | | |

